Given
In Memory
of
John Ira Bennett
Professor of Greek
Union College
From his Books

Ἐν δὲ τῇ ἁρετῇ τὴν γνῶσιν

GREEK
DEPTMN
1888.
AND NEW YORK.
MACMILLAN AND CO.
LONDON:
WITH NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND EXERCISES.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN ROSSALL SCHOOL.
ARTHUR S. WALPOLE, M.A.

AND

REV. JOHN BOND, M.A.

BY

EDITED, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

SELECTIONS FROM ARBIAN.

Elementary Classics.
CONTENTS.

Introduction, - - - - - - - vii
Text, - - - - - - - 1
Exercises, - - - - - - - 51
Notes, - - - - - - - 65
Vocabulary, - - - - - - - 109
Vocabulary of Proper Names, - - - - - - 140
Map of Alexander's March, - - - Frontispiece.
INTRODUCTION.

The general interest which attaches to the conquests and career of Alexander the Great may serve as sufficient excuse for the appearance of this little book. Arrian's *Anabasis* is at once the most trustworthy and the most interesting account which we possess of what Alexander did, while his Greek is easy and sufficiently pure to set before beginners.

Of Flavius Arrianus himself we know but little. Born at the end of the first century A.D., he left his native place Nicomedia (in Bithynia) to receive a liberal education at Athens. In 124 or 126 A.D. the Emperor Hadrian visited that city and conferred upon Arrian Roman citizenship and the privilege of admission to state offices. He now took the name of Flavius. In 136 we find him governor of Cappadocia, and in the following year defeating the Alani or Massagetae and displaying considerable military skill; the same year he dedicated to the emperor a work called *Περίπαλους Πόντου Εὐεξίου*. He was consul in 146, and, under Marcus Aurelius, returned to Nicomedia, and died there in advanced old age.
Introduction.

His *Anabasis* is modelled on the kindred work of Xenophon, whom he resembles in many points, as being a philosopher, historian, soldier, and sportsman. He has been called a 'younger Xenophon,' partly perhaps from the resemblance of their literary styles.

In the preface to his work, Arrian tells us that his main authorities were Aristobulus and Ptolemy, both on the staff of Alexander during his campaigns, and the latter subsequently king of Egypt. Where these two writers agree, Arrian considers that he has the whole truth, though we must remember that Ptolemy's work was not written till B.C. 306, or even B.C. 301, so that his recollection of many points would be obscured. Where a divergence in the two accounts occurs, Arrian uses his judgment and sets down the more plausible or the more noteworthy record. Aristobulus appears to have been an excellent geographer; he was attached to Alexander, and jealous of his reputation, for he is careful at times to refute current 'chit-chat' to the disparagement of the king; he shows also signs of a superstitious character.

Other sources of information would be Alexander's letters and the diary (*ēphemerīdes*) kept by his secretaries. Diodorus, a contemporary of Julius Caesar and Augustus, also left a mass of material, which required however very careful and critical sifting. At the end of his preface Arrian quaintly says, "If any one is surprised at my entertaining a thought of writing, when so many others have written on the same subject, let him read all their works, and then be surprised (if he can) when he has hit upon mine."

[The present edition owes its text and some help in the notes to the editions of Dr. K. Abicht, 1871, and of C. Sintenis, 1863. In the choice of passages we have been partly guided by the selection of Dr. J. von Destinon; the map is taken from an edition of Q. Curtius, Alexander's Latin historian, by S. Dosson.]
SELECTIONS FROM ARRIAN.
Δέγεται δὴ Φιλίππος μὲν τελευτήσαι ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Πιθο- 1
δήμου 'Ἀθηναίων' παραλαβόντα δὲ τὴν βασιλείαν 'Ἀλε-
ξάνδρου, παίδα ὑπὸ Φιλίππου, ἐσὶ Πελοπόννησον παρελθὼν' εἶναι δὲ τὸ τέ 5
ἀμφι τὰ εἴκοσι ἕτη 'Ἀλεξάνδρου,
ἐντεῦθεν ἕως-αγαθώτατος τοῦ 'Ἑλλήνων ὥσπερ ἔτος Πελοπο-
νήσου ἦσαν αὐτῶν παρ’ αὐτῶν τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τῆς ἐπὶ τούς
Πέρσας στρατιάς, ἤμφατα Φιλίππῳ ἡδή
ἐδοξοῦν καὶ αἰτήσαντα λαβεῖν παρ’ ἐκάστων
πλῆς Δακεδαιμονίων. Δακεδαιμονίου δὲ
ἀποκρίνεσθαι μή εἶναι σφισί πάρθην
ἀκολουθεῖν ἄλλοις, ἀλλ‘ αὐτοῖς ἄλλων ἐξηγείσθαι, νεω-
τερίσαι δὲ ἄστα καὶ τῶν 'Ἀθηναίων τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλά
'Ἀθηναίων γε τῇ πρώτῃ ἐφόδῳ 'Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐκ-πλαγέντας
καὶ πλεόνα ἐπὶ τῶν Φιλίππῳ δοθέντων 'Ἀλεξάνδρῳ εἰς τιμὴν 15
ξύνω-χιρήσει. ἐπὶ-αν-ἐλθόντα δὲ ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἐν παρακενή
εἶναι τοῦ ἐς τὴν 'Ασσίαν στόλου.

"Αμα δὲ τῷ ὧρι ἔπληξεν ἐπὶ Θράκης, ἐς Τριβαλλούς καὶ 20
Σιλησίας, ὡς νεωτερίσαντας. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν φυγάδων

Selections from Arrian.

2

póleos oú te ἰσπεῖς kai τῶν ψυλῶν οὐκ ὀλύγοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἠμβολῆσατε ἐς τὰς προφυλακὰς, καὶ τινάς καὶ ἀπ’-ἐκτενον οὐ πολλοῦς τῶν Μακεδόνων, καὶ Ἀλεξάν-

Arries at Thebes.

5 Revolt of Thebes.

δρὸς ἐκ-τέμπεσ τῶν ψυλῶν καὶ τοῦτων, ὡστε αὐτῶν ἀνα-

10 οὐχομενι, παλαιὰ καὶ καλά ὁμόματα, καὶ τῆς βραδυτὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων ἡδη ποτὲ ἀπ-αλλαγμὴν, πυθανότεροι δὲ καὶ τὸ πλῆθος ἐφαίνοντο τεθνηκῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου ἰσχυρίζομενι, ἐν Ὁλυμποῖσι καὶ γὰρ καὶ πολὺς ὁ λόγος οὗτος καὶ πάρα πολλῶν ἐφοίτα, ὅτι το χρόνον ἀπ-ην οὐκ ὄλγον καὶ ὅτι

15 οὐδεὶς ἀγγέλια παρ’ αὐτοῦ ἀφ-ὑκτο, ὡστε ὁπερ φιλεῖ ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις, οὐ γινώσκοντες ὑπὸ ὅντα τὰ μάλιστα καθ’ ἥδονα σφινο ἐκατέχον.

Πυθαμένη δὲ 'Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῶν Ῥηθαίων οὔδαμος ἐδόκα ἀμελητέα εἶναι, τῶν Ῥηθαίων τὸ τόκμημα οὐ φαίλον ποιεῖν 20 μένῳ, εἰ Δακεδαμώνιοι τὰ πάλαι ἡδῆς ταῖς γνώμαις ἀφ-

I. Selections from Arrian. 3

Alexander’s rapid march.

εστηκότες καὶ τινὲς καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ἐν Ἡλευνήνης καὶ Διττοῦ οὐ βέβαιοι ὡντες συν-

25 ἔπιλήσομαι τοῦ νεορέσυμο τοῖς Ῥηθαίοις. ἄγον δὲ παρὰ τὴν Ἑορ-

Ἀλλα Περδίκακας, προ-τεταγμένου τῆς φυλακῆς τοῦ 4

 stocks τῶν τῆς ὑπαρχαία προσ-

stratoptodou σὸν τῇ αὐτῶν τάξει καὶ τοῦ χάρακος τῶν 

πελεμῶν οὐ πολύ ἀφ-εστηκὴς, οὐ προσ-μέναις παρ’ Ἀλε-

麾 δὲ ἐπόμενον. Ἀρμάνον τὸ ἐς τὴν μάχην ἐξύνημα αὐτὸς πρότος προσ-ἐῳ 

τὴν ὑπαρχαία καὶ δια-σπάσες αὐτὸν ἐν-ἐβαλεν ἐς τῶν Ῥηθαίων 5

την προφυλακὴν. τοῦτο δὲ ἐπόμενο

The siege of Thesbae.

10 Ἀπολλώνων τῆς Ἀθηναίων, ὅτι καὶ ἕνω-

τεταγμένος τῷ Περδίκακα ἡ, ἔπ-ήγαγε καὶ αὐτὸς τῆς αὐτῶν τάξιν, ὡς εἰδε τῶν Περδίκακα προ-ἐληφθότα.
1. Selections from Arrian.

10 εἰςω τοῦ χάρακος. ταύτα δὲ ιδίων 'Αλέξανδρος, ώς μη μόνοι ἀπὸ-ληφθήντες πρὸς τῶν Θηβαίων κυνυμενείαν, ἐπὶ-ήγε τὴν ἅλλην στρατιάν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγρίαιας ἐκ-δραμεῖν ἠσθήμενε εἰςω τοῦ χάρακος, τὰ δὲ ἀγόματα καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς ἐπὶ ἔξω κατ-εἰχεν. ἐνθα δὴ Περεδίκκες μὲν
15 τοῦ δευτέρου χάρακος εἰσώ παρ-εἰθὲν βιαζόμενοι αὐτὸς μὲν βληθήσεις πίπτει αὐτοῖς καὶ ἀπὸ-κομίζεται κακῶς ἔξων ἕπι τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ χαλεπῶς δι-εσχόθη ἀπὸ τοῦ τραυματός· τοὺς μὲν τοὺς Θηβαίους ἐς τὴν κολύν ὁδὸν τὴν κατὰ τὸ Ἡράκλεουν φέρουσαν οἱ ἁμα αὐτῷ εἰσ-πεσόντες ὁμοί τοὺς παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάν-
20 δροι τοξόταις συν-ἐκλεισαν. καὶ ἐστε μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ Ἡράκλεουν ἀνὰ-χοροῦσιν εἰσόντο τοῖς Θηβαίοις· ἐντεύθεν δὲ ἐπὶ-στρα-
ψάντων αὐτοῖς σὺν βοή τῶν Θηβαίων φυγὴ τῶν Μακεδών γίγνεται· καὶ Θυρυβώτα τοῖς Κρῆς πίπτει ὁ τοξάχρης καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τοξότων ἐς ἔβδομαν. καὶ τοῦτο Ἀλεξάνδρος
25 τοὺς μὲν αὐτούν φεύγουσιν κατ-ιδῶν, τοὺς Θηβαίοις δὲ λεικυότας ἐν τῇ δίδαξε τῆς τάξιν, ἡμ-βάλλει ἐς αὐτοὺς συν-τεταγμένη τῇ φάλαγγι. οἱ δὲ ᾠδοῦν τοὺς Θηβαίους εἰσώ τῶν πυλῶν καὶ τοὺς Θηβαίους ἐς τοσόνδε ἡ φυγὴ φοβερὰ ἐγγυντι, ὡστε διὰ τῶν πυλῶν ὁδοίμενοι ἐς τὴν
30 πόλιν οὐκ ἔφθασιν συν-κλείσας τά πύλας· ἀλλὰ συν-εισ-
πίπτουσι γὰρ αὐτοῖς εἰσω τοῦ τείχους ὡσπο τῶν Μακεδῶν ἐγχύσι φευγόντων ἐκχόντο, ἄτε καὶ τῶν τείχων διὰ τὰς προφυλακὰς τὰς πολλὰς ἐρήμων ὁπλών. ἐνθα δὴ ὄργη ὡς
35 στὸς θίς τοῖς Μακεδών, ἀλλὰ Φωκεῖς τε καὶ Πλαταιαῖς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ Βοιωτοὶ οὐδὲ ἀμυνομένοις ἐτὶ τοὺς Θηβαίους οὐδεὶς κόσμῳ ἐκτεινοῦν, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἐς-εἰσ-πίπτοντες, οὐσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀλλὰν τετραμμένους, τοὺς δὲ καὶ πρὸς ἱερός ἱερ-
τευόντας, οὔτε γυναικιν οὐκ ἐπὶ παιδεῖαν ἄνθειαν.
40 Ὁ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρος τὴν πόλιν κατασκάληκι εἰς ἔδοκος καὶ
τὴν χώραν κατα-τειμα τοῖς μοῖριας ὅπῃ μὴ ἱερὰ ἀὔτης ἐκλεισεν παῖδας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ ὠσοὶ ὑπελεύστων Θηβαίων,
Selections from Arrian.

5 δὲ ἵππες κατὰ τὰ κέρατα ἡγων, τὰ σκευοφορά δὲ κατόπιν ἔτι-τάξας ἐπεσθεί. Παρμενίων δὲ προσ-ἀλθὸν λέγει τάδε.

"Εμοὶ δοκεῖ, βασιλεῦ, ἀγαθῶν εἶναι ἐν τῷ παρόντι κατα-

προσπέπεθούσαι ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τῇ ὀχήθῃ

ὡς ξύμενοι, τοὺς γὰρ τολμήσαν οὐ δοκοῦ
tολμῆσαν τόλῳ τῷ πεύξι λειτουργοὺς

πληθοῦν ἠμῶν αἰσθηθήναι, καὶ ταύτῃ παρ-εἴον ἐδεέθη εἰσετέως
tῷ στρατῷ δια-μεθέν τὸν πόρον ὑπό-φθοβον γὰρ αὐτοῖ

περάντι τρίν ἐκείνων ἐς τάξιν καθ-ιστάσθαι. νῦν δὲ οὐκ

ἀκυδώνοις μοι δοκοῦμεν ἐπι-χειρήσεων τῷ ἔργῳ, ὡς οὐχ ὁδὸν

15 τε ἐν μετώπῳ διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐγείν τὸν στρατόν. πολλὰ

μὲν γὰρ αὐτόν ὥρατα βαθεία, αὐτὶ δὲ ὀχθαὶ αὐτὰ ὀρᾶς ὡς ὑπερφύλλοι καὶ κρημνώδεις εἰσίν αὐτῶν ἀπάκτως τὰ σῶν

καὶ κατὰ κέρας, ἐπὶ ἀνθενιστατον, ἐκ-βαίνων ἐπι-

κείσασθαι ἐς φάλαγγα συν-τεταγμένοι τῶν τολμῶν οἱ ἵππες'

20 καὶ τὸ πρῶτον σφάλμα ἐς τὰ παρ-ἀντα χαλεπών, καὶ ἐς τὴν ύπερ πάντων τοῦ ποταμός κρύσον σφαλεῖν."}

1. Selections from Arrian.

1. δὲ ἰππείς κατά τα κέρατα ἡγων, τα σκευοφορά δὲ κατόπιν ἐπι-τάξας ἐπεσθεί. Παρμενίων δὲ προσ-ἀλθόν λέγει τάδε.

"Εμοὶ δοκεί, βασιλεῦ, ἀγαθῶν εἶναι ἐν τῷ παρόντι κατα-

προσπέπεθούσαι ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τῇ ὀχήθῃ

ὡς ξύμενοι, τοὺς γὰρ τολμήσαν οὐ δοκοῦ
tολμῆσαν τόλῳ τῷ πεύξι λειτουργοὺς

πληθοῦν ἠμῶν αἰσθηθήναι, καὶ ταύτῃ παρ-εἴον ἐδεέθη εἰσετέως
tῷ στρατῷ δια-μεθέν τὸν πόρον ὑπό-φθοβον γὰρ αὐτοῖ

περάντι τρίν ἐκείνων ἐς τάξιν καθ-ιστάσθαι. νῦν δὲ οὐκ

ἀκυδώνοις μοι δοκοῦμεν ἐπι-χειρήσεων τῷ ἔργῳ, ὡς οὐχ ὁδὸν

15 τε ἐν μετώπῳ διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐγείν τὸν στρατόν. πολλὰ

μὲν γὰρ αὐτόν ὥρατα βαθεία, αὐτὶ δὲ ὀχθαὶ αὐτὰ ὀρᾶς ὡς ὑπερφύλλοι καὶ κρημνώδεις εἰσίν αὐτῶν ἀπάκτως τὰ σῶν

καὶ κατὰ κέρας, ἐπὶ ἀνθενιστατον, ἐκ-βαίνων ἐπι-

κείσασθαι ἐς φάλαγγα συν-τεταγμένοι τῶν τολμῶν οἱ ἵππες'

20 καὶ τὸ πρῶτον σφάλμα ἐς τὰ παρ-ἀντα χαλεπών, καὶ ἐς τὴν ύπερ πάντων τοῦ ποταμός κρύσον σφαλεῖν."
ώσασθαι, καὶ ἐκ τοῦτον ἐπλεονέκτευσεν ἢδη οἱ σὺν 'Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῇ τῇ ἀλλή ῥώμῃ καὶ ἐμπερίᾳ καὶ ὅτι ἦντος κρανεῖνοι πρὸς παλτὰ ἐμάχοντο.

45 Ἐνθα δὴ καὶ 'Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ξύν-τρίβεται τὸ δόρι ἐν τῇ μάχῃ. Δημάρατος δὲ, ἀνήρ Κορίνθιος, τῶν ἄμφω ἄρτυν ἔγαρ, δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τὸ αὐτοῦ δόρο, καὶ δὲ ἀναλαβὼν καὶ διδών Μιθριδάτην τὸν Δαρείου γαμήλον πολὺ πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων προ-ὑπέστην καὶ ἐπ-ἀγοντα ἄμα οἱ ὀσπερ ἐμβολον τῶν ἄνθρωπων, ἔξε-ελαίνεν καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ παιάσεις ἀνα τὸ πρόσωπό των δόρατα κατα-βάλλει τοῖς Μιθριδάτην. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ 'Ῥουσάκης μὲν ἐπ-ελαίνε τῷ 'Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ παία 

Kleitus saves the king.

55 τοῦ μὲν κράνους τῇ ἀπε-ἐβασαν, τῇ πληγῇ δὲ ἔσχε τὸ κράνος, καὶ κατα-βάλλει καὶ τούτου 'Ἀλεξάνδρος παίσας τῷ ἐνυστῷ διὰ τοῦ δόρου ἐς τὸ στέφειν. Σπειριδάτης δὲ ἀν-ἐγείρατο μὲν ἢ ἔσχε ἐπ᾽ 'Ἀλεξάνδρου ὡς εἰς τὴν κοπίδα, ὡς φόβος δὲ αὐτοῦ. Κλαίον ὁ Δρο-

60 πίδου παῖεν χαὶρον καὶ κατὰ-κόπτει τῶν ἄμμων τοῦ πολλοῦ. 

Σπειριδάτου δὲν τῇ κοπίδα καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπ-ἐκ-βαίνοντες 

dei τῶν ἄτρως διὰ τοῦ πρό-χρυσα καὶ τῶν τεταμῶν προ-

εὐγνώντο τοῖς ἀμφὶ 'Ἀλεξάνδρου.

Ὁ δὲ 'Ἀλεξάνδρος νυκήσας καὶ τῶν Περσῶν τῶν ἦγεμόνας ἔθαψεν. ἔθαψε δὲ καὶ τῶν μυθοφόρων ὁ Ἐλ-

Voltage set of the Greek mercenaries.

ληρὴς οἱ εἰς τοὺς πολεμοὺς στρατεύσεις ἀπ- 

θικανοῦς διὰ αὐτῶν αἰχμαλώτων Ἠλαβε, 

tούτους δὲ δήμας ἐν πέδαις ἐς Μακεδονίαν 

ἀπέτευψεν ἐργάζεσθαι, ὅτι παρὰ τὰ κοινὰ δοξάτα τοῖς 'Ελληνεσ 'Ελληνες ὅτις ἐν ἐστὶ τῇ Ἐλλάδι ἦπερ τῶν 

70 ἁρπάρων ἐμάχοντα. ἀπο-πήματε δὲ καὶ ἐς 'Ἀθῆρας τρι-

κοστίας πανοπλίας Περσικὰς ἀνάθημα εἶναι τῇ 'Ἀθηνᾳ ἐν 

πόλει καὶ ἐπίγραμμα ἐπὶ-γραφήν ἐκδόθη τῷ: 'Αλεξάνδρος Φιλίτσαν καὶ οἱ 'Ελληνες πλὴν Δακεδα-

μονίων ἀπὸ τῶν ἁρπάρων τῶν τῆς Ἀσίαν 

75 κατοικοῦντον.
BOOK II.

1 Αλέξανδρος δὲ ως ἐς Γόρδιον τὸλιν τῆς Φρύγιας παρῆλθε, πόθος λαμβάνει αὐτὸν τὴν ἄμαξαν ἵδειν τοῦ Γόρδιον καὶ τοῦ Ἰουγοῦ τῆς ἀμάξης τοῦ δεσμοῦ. λόγος δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀμάξης ἐκείνης

5 παρὰ τοῖς προσχώροις πολλῷ κατεῖχε, Γόρδιον εἶναι τῶν παλαί Φρυγῶν ἄνδρα πόνητα· καὶ γενέσθαι αὐτῷ παίδα Μίθαν ὅνομα. ἤδη τὴν ἄνδρα εἶναι τὸν Μίθαν καλὸν καὶ γενναῖον καὶ ἐν τούτῳ στάσει πείθεται ἐν σφυτὶ τῆς Φρύγος, καὶ γινθόθαι αὐτὸς χρήσιον ὅτι ἀμαξαί ἔξει αὐτοῖς

10 βασιλέα καὶ ὅτι οὕτω αὐτοῖς κατασταῖσαι τὴν στάσιν. ἕτερὸς ἐπὶ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων βουλευόμενος ἔδειξεν τὸν Μίθαν ὅμως τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ ἑπιστήνη τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ αὐτή ἀμάξης, τοὺς δὲ, ἡμελεύλαντας τὸ μαντεῖον, τοῦτον ἔκειν γνωστὰ ἕντον ὀ θεός αὐτοῖς ἐφραζόν τι ἄξια ἡ ἀμαξαὶ.

15 καὶ καταστήσας μὲν αὐτοῖς βασιλέα τὸν Μίθαν, Μίθαν δὲ αὐτοῖς τὴν στάσιν καταστάσας, καὶ τῇ ἀμάξας του πατρὸς ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ ἄναθετάσας χα. ἑσπερία τοῦ Δι. πρὸς δὲ δὴ τοῦτος καὶ τὸδέ περὶ τῆς ἀμάξης ἐμπεθεῖτο, ὡστε λύσει τοῦ Ἰουγοῦ

πῆς ἀμάξης τοῦ δεσμοῦ, τοῦτον χρήναι ἄρξαι τῆς Ἀσίας. δὲ ὁ δεσμὸς ἢ δομοῦ κρανεῖας καὶ τοῦτον ὁτὲ τέλοις 20 ὀουθέ ἀρχῇ ἐφαίνετο. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὠς ἀπόροις μὲν ἔχειν ἔφερεν λύσιν τοῦ δεσμοῦ, ἀλλοῦ δὲ περιδεῖν οὖκ ἦθελε, μὴ τιμᾶν καὶ τοῦτο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολλοὺς κίνησιν ἐφάγεται, οἷς μὲν λέγουσιν ὅτι παῖσας τῷ ἐξοκεῖος δικαιότης τοῦ δεσμοῦ καὶ λέοντας ἐφή. Ἀριστοτέλους δὲ λέγει ἐξελόντα τὸν ἑστορα 25 τοῦ ρυμοῦ, ἐν τῷ τόπῳ διαβραδυμένος διὰ τοῦ τοῦτο διαμάχης, ἐξεκύκλωσα ἐξο τοῦ ρυμοῦ τῆς ζωγόνον. ὅπως μὲν δὴ ἐπάθη τα ἄμφι τοῦ δεσμοῦ τοῦτο 'Ἀλέξανδρος οὐκ ἔχω ἐσχάλησαν. ἀπηλλάγη δ' οὖν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀμάξης αὐτῆς τε καὶ οἱ ἄμφι αὐτοῦ ὑ λογίῳ τοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ ἑτέρᾳ 30 τοῦ δεσμοῦ ἐκμεθείκτος, καὶ γὰρ καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκείνης βρονταὶ τε καὶ σέλας ἢ σοφικοῦ ἐπέσημην· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦτοι ἔθει τῇ ὑποταρα 'Ἀλέξανδρος τοῖς φήμασι θεοὶ τὰ τε σημεῖα καὶ τοῦ δεσμοῦ τὴν λύσιν.

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ, ὡς τὴν Τάρσου προσελθείς, ὑπὸ καμάτου 2 ἐνδόθησαν· οἱ δὲ εἰς τὸν Κύδωνον ποταμὸν λέγοντα μίθα πίπτοντα νησίσεως, ἐπιθυμήσαντα τοῦ ὁδαῖος, ἱδρύντα καὶ καθαίρει ἔχομενος. (ὁ δὲ Κύδων μὲ διὰ μέσης τῆς πολέως· ψυχρός τέ ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ ἑδόκειν καθαρός) ἀπεσαμφα τοῦ ὄντως ἐξερήθη Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τῆς ισχροῖς καὶ ἀγρυπνώς ἐξερήθη, καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους λατρεῖς οὐκ ὤφθαλμοι εἶναι βιώσωμοι. Φιλίππου δὲ Ἀκράνσα, ἑαυτῷ, ἐξώντα 'Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τὰ τῷ ἄμφι λατρεῖς ἢ τὰ μάλιστα πιστεύομεν καὶ τὸ ἄλλα οὐκ ἄδικον ἐν τῷ 10 στρατῷ ὑπατα, καθάρει ἐδεικνύει 'Ἀλέξανδρον φαρμάκῳ καὶ τὸν κελεύει καθήκας, τὸν μὲν δὴ παρασκευάζειν τῆς κύλικας. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ 'Ἀλέξανδρον δοθῆναι ἐπιστολή παρὰ Παρμένιο-

νος υφλαξασθεὶς Φιλίππου ἀκόους γὰρ διεθέρεται ὑπὸ Δαρείου χρήσιαν ὡστε φαρμάκῳ ἀποκειναὶ 'Ἀλέξανδρον, 15 τὸν δὲ, ἀναγνώτο τὴν ἐπιστολήν καὶ ἐπὶ μετὰ χείρα ἔχοντα αὐτὸν μὲν λαμβάνει τῆς κύλικας ὑπὸ τὴν φαρμάκου τῇ ἐπιστολήν δὲ τῷ Φιλίππου δοθῶν ἀναγνώσει. καὶ ὁμοῖο τὸν
Selections from Arrian.

Andropontes and their commanders, in their 25
lamentation, that the state was in danger, and that
'Alexander' was at that time at war with Persia.

Darius, knowing this, decided to send a
message to 'Alexander' to request his help. 'Alexander'
agreed to help him and promised to send an army
immediately.

The Persians and Macedonians fought bravely for
their cause, and in the end, the Persians were
defeated. However, 'Alexander' realized that his
army was not strong enough to continue the fight,
and he decided to withdraw.

Darius was disappointed but was content with the
success of his campaign and the victory of his army.

The Battle of Issus was a significant event in the
history of the Greek and Persian empires, as it
marked the end of the Persian Wars and the rise of
the Macedonian Empire.
Selections from Arrian. [II.

to metepon ths fylagous ou dunato elgenwto en th auti tagei diassagisathai, taute epballooun ois "Eileis ths ois Makedesou h melista dieptasaemhna autous thn fylagha katek疏通]. kai to ergon entath kaferon h, thn men e th 30 potamo anapwsathai tois Makedesou kai thn viken tois hei feugous auton anasaasathai, tois Makedesou dth ths te 'Alexandrou hede fainemenei eispragias me lefibhjanei kai thn Độan ths fylagous, ois amaxou de eis to tote diebebe- mheni, h afanws. kai th kal tois xeneis tis ths Eileikis 35 kai th Makodesou philomia eswpeisen es allhous, kai entathiptei Ptolemaios te thn Seleukou, anhe agados genomou, kai alloi es ekosi malisto kai ekaton thn oik oilemmou Makedesou.

"Evan touto de ai apth tois deixou kertos tageis, tepramemous
40 hede tois kata spas ths Persow orantai, etpi tois zinous te tois mnebhorous tois Dareios kai to poionmenon sfwos epikamianes apo te to potamou apisthauto autous, kai kata to parerephwos tei Persikou strefeumatois uphbalag-
ghantas es ta plajia embeblhketes hede ekopnon tois
45 zinous, kai oi ippes de oi ths Persow kata tois
Oisealow tesxaihmen es meiwsen entos ths potamou en
autow to erph, all' epibibantes eirwstous enbalalon eis
ths xalas ths Oisealow kai taute xwrosita ippekrhia
katera. oide proion einkeianoi oi Persai prina Dareion
50 te tefunstata xerontai kai prina alporaghainen sfwos
thn mnebobhoron suxkopantas apo ths fylagous, tote de hede
lambda te kai es panton h fugh eignwto.

5 Dareios de, elide ois elihew toio autoun tois
Flight of Dareius.

protopos ejfwnen. kai eset men umalais
churais en th fugh eimplagxh, aporw to
erumatos diebados'rei de xaraqo th kai
5 allhais suxchariais enekeisen, to mef arma otopolisei autou
cai thn astibha kai thn kandwn ekdis' o de kai
to toso ejpolisei eli to erumatos' autous de Ippou epibas ejfwnen'
Selections from Arrian. 5

II.]  

Selections from Arrian. 17

tōn taisδων dōnai éthelai 'ALEξANDRΩV Dārēion Tēn dē

χwran pāsan tēn éntos Eυφρατοῦ pōtamō

ëstē ëpeti bēlāsaan tēn Ἑλληνικῆν 'ALEξ

ánδrou ènai. γῆμαtta dē tēn Dārēion pāiða

'ALEξANDRΩN fīlōn tē ènai Dārēi kai xúμa[xh. kai
tōutōn èn tē klykōn tōn ētairoùn ἀπαγγέλτων Pαmmē

nivānān mēn lēgōunti 'ALEξANDRΩN èpētē tā dētēn 'ALE

xandros dē èn tē tautōs ñhāpetai katalūsas tōn pōlemon

mēkētē prásw kīndunēnēn. 'ALEξANDRΩN dē Pαmmēnivōi ἀπo-
kīnēsαdha tā dē tā dētēn ènai, èpetē Pαmmēnivōi èn, òntos

eπraβei, èpetē dē 'ALEξANDRΩS èstōn, ἀποκρīναtata Dārēi

āpeti ñh kai ἀπτηρūnato. èpē òtē oúte χρηmātōn dētōnta 15

pārā Dārēiōu oûte tēs χώras lēbēi anitì tēs pāstēs tō

mēros ènai òtē tē klykōn kai tēn χωrān autōu pāsan. γῆμη

tē ën ñthē tēn Dārēiōu pāiða, γῆμη ën kai ou dīdōntos Dārēiōu

èkλêνε tē autōu ñkivē, èi tē eπρēsēiètai ñhēlōn pīλ焉tōn pārì autōu. tāutē ès hèkous 20

Dārēiōs, tās mēn xμābāsēs àpēγw tās prōs 'ALEξANDRΩN,

ē pαραsēkē dē tōn pōlemon aûdēs ën.

'ALEξANDRΩS dē ètē. 'Alyūtōn ègνa pōiesiān tōn stōlon. 9

kai ën autē tē mēn ñllā tēs Pαlaiotētēs

caloumēnēs Sūrias pροsēkwrhēsē ëthē. Gaza resists.

eünoûçhos dē tēs, ò ðnēma ἡν Bātis, kραtōn

tēs Gāzāwōn pōlewōn, òn pρōstēghei 'ALEξANDRΩ, ñllā 'Arabās 5

tē miqṿhōn éπαγγέλmēn kai ðtōn èk pōλhōn pαrαsēkwrhōkos

diarēkē ës xρōnūn pōλiρhẹ̄n kai tōtō χwρō kpoistẹ̄n, mēptō

an bīlē álōn, ègνa mē dēkswsē tē pōλē 'ALEξANDRΩN.

'Apēkē dē ëtē Gāzā tēs mēn bēlāsēsē ëkswi mēλistå

stādonēs, kai ëtē ὅμωdēs kai bēdēia ès autẹ̄n ën ënōsos 10

kai ëtē bēlāsēsē kai kātē tē pōλēn tēnagẉhẹ̄sē pāstā. mēgahlē

dē pōλēs ëtē Gāzā ën kai ëtē khẉmōtōs ὑψηλόu ὕκwstō kai
tēhēs periēβēlētētē autẹ̄tō χẉrōn.

'En dē tē pōlōrkhẹ̄ 'ALEξANDRΩs tēs mēn prōs tōs pēhνamē

ēgō bēlōn autẹ̄n ëkswị' òs dē ἐkdrōmē tē ëk tēs pōλēwōn 15

B
Selections from Arrian.

BOOK III.

1. 'Alexandros δὲ ἐπὶ Αλγυπτοῦ, ὑπὲρ τὸ πρῶτον ὀρμήθη, ἐστάλετο, καὶ ἔβδομον ἦμέραν ἀπὸ τῆς Γάζης ἐλαύνων ἤκειν ἐν Πνεύσνον τῆς Ἀλγυπτοῦ. ὃ ἐδὲ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς παρέπλευ στὸν ἐκ Φοινίκης καὶ καταλαμβάνει τὰς ναῦς ἐν Πελούσιῳ ὁμοίωσιν.

2. 'Επὶ δὲ ὅστορον ἐς Κάνονον καὶ κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Μαρίαν περιπελάτοσα ἀποβαίνει ὅπως νῦν Ὄλλονδρεια πόλις φίλουσα, Ἀλεξάνδρου ἑπάνωσος. καὶ ἔδωκεν τοῖς ὁ ἱππότισσις καὶ ἐκβιοθεῖον ἐν αὐτῷ πολλοῖς περὶ σημεῖα τῆς τοῦ ἱππῶν ἡ πρώτη ἡ πρῶτη καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν τόπον Ἐλληνικὸν, Ἄιωνδος ζητοῦσας, καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ὑπὲρ ἐπιβρέλθησαν. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους ἔστησεν, καὶ τὰ ἱππάλα ἑφαίνοντο. Στούτος δὲ Αριστότελος, οὐδὲν ἔγραψεν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρμοσμος τοῦ Ἱσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἰσραήλ ἢ τοῦ Ἀμμωνα.
Selections from Arrian.

III.

20 Selections from Arrian.

poly meliōna hē xinē hē in Kilkída emáxeto. tauta akouías 'Al'xanðros hēi stou'bhi ωs epî tôn Tíhreta. ωs de afíkeito, ou'te autōn Dáreioν katalamabaini ou'te tôn filikēn hēntina. 25 ἀπελευθείτη οἱ θεραπεύοντες, ἀλλὰ διαβαινόντων τῷ πόλον, χαλέψων μὲν ἔξω εὐφράτης τοῦ βουλῆσθαι. ἀλλὰ ἐλέγχων.

5 Aras de ἀπὸ τοῦ Τύχρητος μείν ἐπὶ τῆς Ἀτονίας χώρας, ἐν 5 ἀριστερὰ μέν ἔχουν τὰ Γερμανίων ὅρη, ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν Τύχρητον. ἡ ἀποτέλεσμα ὃ καὶ ἀνάλογα ἐν τῇ ἀποκάλυψεν τῇ ἀνεπανάλημμα. ἤλεγχων δὲ ἡ πάσα στρατιὰ ἡ Δαρείου ἑπεξεργάζεται ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἑξέπεφτο καὶ κατελήμβηκεν τὸν πόλον. ὡς καὶ Μαζίαος, ὃς ἐν τῷ φυλακτείῳ τοῦ Πατρίδος ἑπετρέπτην άποκάλυψεν τὸν πόλον. ἀλλὰ καὶ Ἕρμηνος ὃς ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης ὃς ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἐφιέασεν τὸν πόλον. ὡς καὶ Ἀρξαράνδρος ἐπέπεφτηκεν καὶ ἐρρίπτηκεν τῷ πόλον. ὡς καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρος 

4 'Al'xanðros de ἀμε τῷ ἡρρ υποκαίρων ἐχει θριφόμενα, καὶ ἀνω ὀρμάτω ὃς ἐν τῇ Ἀτρακείᾳ τοῦ τῶν Συρακοσίων τοῦ ἐν Εὐφράτη την τοπαλμιν, καὶ ἀφίκεσθαι ἐν Ἐφραίμικον μινὸν Ἐκατομμύρων καὶ καταλαβαίνει ταῦτα γεφύρων ἐξολοθρείας τῶν πόλον. καὶ γρατιν τι εἰς τοῖς Ἐφραίμικοι ἐν τῇ ἐν Εὐφράτη 

5 Alexander crosses the Euphrates, B.C.

331.

5 ἦπαινες [μήν] ἔχουν περὶ τρισχολίου καὶ τοῦτον Ἐλλὰνας 

5 ἤπαινες μισοδόφων τρισχολίους τους μὲν ἐν αὐτῷ ὑπ’ τῶν πολιτικοῦ ἐφιέασεν, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὅπου ἐνανθρώποις καὶ γεφύρων ἐν τῇ ἀποκάλυψεν τῷ πόλον. καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρί

6 and the Tigris.

Metapontias kaloumenis χώρας. ἀλλὰς άπ’ ἔνες κατὰ τῆς ὅλης τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ Δαρείου 

20 stratevmatos katastokhēs enēka anaskebdasemōn exēgygelaean ότι Δαρείου ἐπὶ τοῦ Τύχρητος πολιμένα, ἐν τῇ ἀποκάλυψεν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρίνης τῇ ἑδύναται καὶ διεσθῆ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν. ἐν τῇ ἑξολοθρείᾳ τῆς τοῦ Νεαρί

25 5 Force of Darius and his position.
Selections from Arrian [III]

κατά δὲ τὸ ἐσώμιμον ἐστὶν ἐπικμητὴν οἱ τοῖς Θρήκεις ἔστετέχας, δὲν ἤγετο Σιτάλκης, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους οἱ ἐξώμιμοι ἔστις, δὲν ἤρχη Ἰλόμονος, ἐπὶ δὲ οἱ 'Ὀθρύσαι ἤπεις, δὲν ἦγετο τὸ Ιέρωνος. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς σκευοφόροις οἱ ἄφο Θρήκης πεζοὶ ἐς πυλακὴν ἐτέχθησαν, ἢ ἐς πάσα στρατιά ἀλέξανδρον ἤπεις μὲν ἐς ἐπακεχολόν, πεζοὶ δὲ άμφι τὰς τέσσαρας μυριάδας.

'Ως δὲ ομοί ἦν τὰ στρατόπεδα ἐγγύνετο, ὃθεν Ἰαρεῖος 7 τοις καὶ οἱ άμφι' αὐτῶν. ἔντα δὴ δέισας Ἰαρεῖος μὴ προ-χωρησάτων οι καὶ σοὶ ἀμαλλὰ τῶν Μακεδόνων ἀνεβαίη σφυί γενήται τὰ ἁμάτα, κελεύει τοὺς προτεταγμένους τοῖς ἐξώμιμοι προ-πεπεινάνε τὸ κέρας τὸ δεξίον, ἢ ἀλέξανδρος ἰς, τοῦ 5 μικρὸν προσωτέρῳ αὐτῶς ἐξέγονε τὸ κέρας. τούτῳ δὲ γενομένου ἀλέξανδρος ἐμβάλλει κελεύει οἱ αὐτοὺς τοὺς μισοφόρους ἤπεις, ὁ Μενίδας ἦγετο.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τὰ ἁμάτα τὰ δραστανθήματα ἐφήκαν οἱ βάρβαροι κατ' αὐτῶν ἀλέξανδρον, ὃς ἀνατρέξατο αὐτῷ 10 τὴν φάλαγγα. καὶ ταύτη μάλιστα ἐσωθήσθην, τὰ μὲν γαρ εὔθυς ἢς προσεφέρετο κατηκότον εἶναι τοῖς Ἀρμήνεις καὶ οἱ ἦν Βαλάκηρ ἀκοντισταῖ τοῖς προτεταγμένοις τὸ ἐπτόν ἐτάφρων.

τὰ τῶν Ῥωμηνῶν ἀντιλαμβανόμενοι τοὺς τοῖς ἀναβατάς 15 κατέστωσαν καὶ τοὺς ἐπτόν περιπτάμενοι ἐκοπτοῦν. ἔστι δὲ τὰ διὸν μὲν οἱ διεξέγονε διὰ τῶν τάξεων διέσχον γάρ, ὅσπερ παρήγγελτο αὐτῶς, ἦν προσπέττει τὰ ἁμάτα, καὶ ταύτη μάλιστα ξυνεῖν αὐτὰ τὰ σώς καὶ οἱ ἐπηρεῖσθαι ἐβλαβεῖσθε διέθεκαν ἀλλὰ καὶ τούτοις οἱ τοῖς ἐποκόμους τῆς ἀλέξανδρου 20 στρατιάς καὶ ἔπαυσαντοι τοῖς βασιλικοὶ ἐκράτησαν.

'Ως δὲ Ἰαρεῖος ἦπιην ἦν τὴν φάλαγγα πάσαν, ἄντα καὶ ἀλέξανδρος Ἀρέτην μὲν κελεύει ἐμβάλειν τοῖς περιπτάμενοι τὸ κέρας σφῶν τὸ δεξίον ὃς ἐς κύκλωσαν αὐτῶς δὲ τέως μὲν ἐπὶ κέρας τους ἀμφὶ αὐτῶν ἤρε τὸν ἢς ἐκβοηθήσατον 25
Selections from Arrian. [iii.

30 τιτρούς τὸς κυκλομένου τὸ κύρα τὸ δεξίων παραρρισάντων τῆς πρώτης φάλαγγος τῶν βαρβάρων, ἐπιστρέφας κατὰ τὸ διέχον καὶ ἀστερ ἐξολοθρόν ποίης τῆς τῇ ἤπειρο τῆς ἑπιρρεμῆς καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος τῆς ταύτη τεταγμένης ἤγε δρόμω

Darius' flight.

35 κόπτοντες, ἢ τε φάλαγγες ἡ Μακεδονική πυκνή καὶ ταῖς σαράντασις πελεκείας ἐμβιβάζεται ἡδὴ αὐτοῖς, καὶ πάνω ὡμοι 

40 εὐφρατῶς τὸν περὶ Ἀρδέην. Ταύτη μὲν δὲ τῶν Ἀρδέων φυγή καρπερὰ ἦν, καὶ ταῖς Μακεδώνες ἐφέσπειμεν ἐφόνεον τοὺς φεύγοντας.

"Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἀναπαύσετος τοὺς ἀμφοὶ αὐτὸν ἰππέας ἦν ἐπὶ τῇ δύος χώκας προσχώρας αὐθέντας κατὰ σπονδήν ήπ'

45 "Ἀρβηλα, ὡς Ἀρδέων τὰ ἀείριστα ἐκαὶ τὰ χρηματά καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κατασκεύην τὴν βασιλικήν. καὶ ἀφίκετο αἰς ἂρρητα τῇ ἡς ὡς ἀρνηθηρίᾳ, διὰ τὰς τὰ πάντας ἐκ τῇ μάχης σταδίους μᾶλλον ἐκ ἐξηκάσοις. καὶ Ἀρδέων μὲν τὸν καταλαμβάνει ἐν Ἀρδῆλαις, ἀλλ᾿ ἐφέσπεις οὐδὲν θὰ ἐλεύσης.

50 Ἀρδέας τὰ χρηματά δὲ ἐγκατελθήθη καὶ τὴν κατασκευήν πάντα, καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τὸ Ἀρδέαν αὐθέντη ἐγκατελθήθη καὶ ἡ ἄστασις αὐθέντως σὲ τὸ ἀλώλο.

"Ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν ἀμφοὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀνδρέας μὲν ἐς ἑκεῖνον μᾶλλον, ἦκεὶ δὲ ἐκ τῶν τραυμάτων καὶ τῆς κακοπα-

55 θείας τῆς ὑπὸ τὴν δικέες ὑπέρ τῶν χίλιον, καὶ τούτων τῆς ἑπιρρεμῆς ἦκεὶ σχεδὸν τὸ ἑκεῖς. τῶν βαρβάρων δὲ

Greek.

"Εἰκ δὲ τῆς νύκτος οἱ Βαπυλώνοι Ἀλέξανδρον φιλίως παρεδέμαντο καὶ ἀσάντως οἱ Σουσίανοι. Ἡντάθηθα θυσαία τῷ πατρὶ ὡρῳ καὶ λαμπάδα ποίης καὶ ἑγώνα γυμνῶν, προξῆρις ὡς ἔπι Πέρασα. Ἐμβαλόντες δὲ αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν γῆν τῶν Οὐεδῶν οἱ μὲν σφαῖς ἐνέδοσαν, οἱ δὲ ὑδροὶ καλυμμένους 05 ὥσιν ὑπῆκουσι. οἱ δὲ ἦραν τῶν ἀμφοὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἀπέθανον, ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ ἀρχή ἀναφεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ Κράτερων κατακόρθησαν. ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας τὰς Περσίδας ἀφίκετο, καταλαμβάνοντα αὐτῶν Ἀριστοβράζαν ἀν ὧν ὑπῆρκερ τοὺς Περσίδας σταράτημα, πεζοὺς μὲν ἐς τετρακικύριους ἐχόντα, ἰππέας δὲ ἐς ἐπτακοσίους, διατεχνίκας τῶν πύλας καὶ αὐτῶν πρὸ τῷ τέχει ἕτοι ἑπταπεδεύκουσα, ἦς ἐργεῖς τῆς παρόδου Ἀλέξανδρον.

Τότε μὲν δὲ αὐτῶν καταστρατευθεῖσα τῇ ὑπὸ ὑπερείρα τῇ ἐνναίοιο ἐν τῇ παραλακτῇ τῷ ἐπτακοσίῳ. Ἡ παραλακτῇ τῇ παραλακτῇ ἐπιτή τῷ τέχει. ὡς δὲ ἀπόρο τὸν διὰ τοὺς ἐνακτοὺς ἐφεύροντα αἰρθῇ καὶ πολλὰς πληγὰς ἂν ἀμφοὶ αὐτῶν ἐλαμβάνως ἐς ὑπερείρια τῇ θυρίῳ καὶ ἀπὸ μικρῶν πελαμαμοῖς, τότε μὲν ἀπόχωρε ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον 5 τῶν δὲ αἰχμαλωτῶν φραγμάτων ἅλην ὄπερ περιέσθαν αὐτῶν, ὡς ἐνεῖο τὸν τῶν τῶν ὃπος ἐπιτραχΤας τῷ τραχείῳ τῷ ἀναλακτῇ τῷ ἐπιτή τῷ τέχει ἐπιτραχεῖς, ἦς ἐργεῖς τῆς παρόδου Ἀλέξανδρον.

Alexander carries the position.

Advance to the Persian Gates.
Selections from Arrian.

26 Treasures in Parthia.

25 Pursuit of Darius.

10 "Eldon de eis Ecbatana Alezandros tois mou Theodolous upoas kai tois allous xurmatous aspompeis opoiws eis allas, tou te mouton apodous autois enetel ton xynetanumou kai duiychia par autou talauta epidois. Ousis 5 de idia bouloito epi misoforiain par autou, upografhetai eklewson kai egenontoi ois upograpfaimeni ois oligai.

Autous de analefoun ton te iston ton epiwron kai ton probrumous kai tois misoforouous upoas, kai ton fylagia Makedonikwn kai tois tozotais kai tois 'Agrainas hlaunen 10 ois epi Daraioin, hzeni eis Ecbatanaion phugonta, kai autou kata ton odoon stoiothi gynomin ton te stratiwtov polllon kymnovotes upoleipounto kai iston apodeiphsonov allla kai ois xenai, kai afuniknetai eis 'Ragnas evdekathe himeras. Dicexai 15 de o charios oustos episth ton Katastion tulon odoon himeras meidou mou kai eklewson ois 'Alezandros hzenai.

Kai afuniknetai par autou episth Daraioin stratiwtow Baktirianis, Baktirianos anhir, agyglion oti Vhissos o Vaktirion saptiphs kai alloi tines xynelipotites eis Daraioin.

20 Taista akoixanta Alezandros anasto dikteia xelwtho, kai hzeni mou xekumon ois te anorres kai ois iston upo th talautporia th enwxei: Hllla kai eis hzenai, kai eldos odoon pollynh tis te nukto kai tis episth himeras este episth mesembrhian.
5 Diá χίλιον τε πολλάς καὶ εἶν ἀποτίς τῶν ἐπιηθείων καὶ τῶν οἰκτικών τελαιωτᾶ ἐπῆλθεν.

Kai Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς τὸν Καύκασον τὸ ὄρος ἦγεν, οὐ καὶ πόλιν ἔκτισε καὶ ἀνύμασεν Ἀλέξανδρεῖαν καὶ τύσια ἐντάθα τοῖς θεοῖς ὑπέρβαλε τὸ ὄρος τὸν Καύκασον.

10 Ὁ δὲ ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὠμόν ποταμόν, ὁ δὲ Ὠμός ρέει μὲν ἐκ τοῦ ὅρους τοῦ Καύκασον, ἐστὶ δὲ ποταμὸν μεγίστον τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, ὅσους γε δὴ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπῆλθε, πλὴρ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμῶν οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ πάντων ποταμῶν μεγίστοι εἰσίν. ἐξήρετο γάρ τὸ Ὠμός καὶ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν τὴν καὶ'

15 Ὑρκανίαν. διαβάλλεται δὲ ἐπιχειροῦτο αὐτῷ τῶν ποταμῶν πάντη ἀπορον ἐφαίνετο τὸ μὲν γάρ εὕρος ἦν ἐς ἔξοδον σταδίους, βάθος δὲ οὐ πρὸς λόγον τοῦ εὕρος, ἀλλὰ πολὺ δὴ τι βαθύτερος καὶ ψαμμάτης καὶ βρείμα δὲ, ὧς τὰ καταπηγνύοντα πρὸς αὐτὸ τοῦ ροῦ ἐκτριφθεῖσαν ἐκ τῆς γῆς οὐ χαλεπῶς, οί δὲ οὐ βεβαιῶς κατὰ τῆς σφήμου ἱσχυρέως. ἄλλος δὲ καὶ ἀπορία ὑλῆς ἐν τοῖς τόποις ἦν καὶ τρίβῃ πολλή ἐφαίνετο, εἰ μακρὸν μετοικινοῦσα ὅσα ἐς γεφύρωσιν τοῦ πόρου. ἔναγαν δὲ τὸ ταῖς διαφόροις υφίστην ἵππον τὴς ἱππεῖας καὶ στρατιωτά τε καὶ ἐντοίχισεν ἀκριβῶς, τοῦ μὴ ἐκδύσαται ἐς αὐτὸς τοῦ ὁθόνου. ἐμπληθμένος δὲ καὶ ἐναφράσατο ἵππον ἐκάνει ἐγένετο διαβιβάζα τοῦ στρατὸν ἐν πάντε ἡμέραις.

Περάσας δὲ τὸν Ὠμόν ποταμὸν ἦγε κατὰ οἰκτικόν ἔνα
20 Ἡρκυνον εἰναι εἰς τῇ δυνάμει ἐπισβάζοντα, καὶ εἰς τοῦτο ἀμφικύνεται τοῦτο Σιντεμέουν καὶ Δασαφρέου καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς αὐτῶν ἀγγέλλωντες τις Σιντεμέους καὶ Δασαφρέους, εἰ περιθεὶς τοῦ τοῦ ὅρους καὶ ἀποικίαν οἰκίσασθαι καὶ ἀνεμέλητον μὴ ὁπλάται καὶ θρησκεύοντες, ἦν ἐν τῇ Χαλκῖδῃ καὶ ἐν τῷ ἄσετο δέ τὸν Δάγου δυνατόν ἐστὶν οὖν τῶν πέραν τοῦ ὅρους ἕσσε καὶ τῶν ὁ ποταμὸς καὶ τῆς Ἑρκυνον θάλασσαν.

Alexander crosses the Oxus.

BOOK IV.

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ πρὸς τῷ Τανάδιντον ποταμῷ ἐπενίοις πόλιν 1 ὕστατος, καὶ ταῦταν ἐκῶντο ἐπιβαλον, ὃς τῶν χωρῶν ἐπισταθεὶς αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο αἰδηθεὶς ἐπὶ μέγα τῆς πόλιν καὶ ἐν καλῶι ὄλεισθαι τῇ ἐπὶ Σκοπῆς, εἰςτέ τόν Σιντεμέον καὶ τῆς ἱππείρης τῆς ἀκρίμα τῆς ὑπό τῶν καταρρηκτῶν τῶν πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπικούνων βαρβάρων.

Ἐν δὲ τῇ Ἑρκυνον πέντε πόλεις ἐν δυοὶ ἡμέραις ἐλάτον 10 τα καὶ ἀλατροδοτοῦντος ἔκει ἐπὶ τῆς ἔγινον τῶν
10 in the Kourotopoli. ἄλλα μηχανᾶς γὰρ προσάγων τῷ τείχει
'Alexandros ταύτη μὲν καταστείλει ἐπενάει
Siege of Cyropolis. τὸ τείχος καὶ κατὰ τὸ ἄλλο παραρρηγήθηκε
ν λατέ τοῦ ποταμοῦ αὐτός τάς προσβολὰς ποιήσας. αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς καταστεῖλε τοὺς ἐκρούς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, δὲ διὰ τὴν πόλιν
er χειμάρρους ὡς ἔδοξεται, ἔρροις εἰς τὸ τότε ἔθαντο καὶ οἱ ἐξυγειεῖς τοὺς τείχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ οὗν παρασχεῖν πάροδον στρατιωτῶς διάδοναι ἐν τῇ πόλιν, ἀναλαγὸν τοὺς τέ σωματοφυλακ爱护 καὶ τοὺς ἐπαστικὰς καὶ τοὺς ἐκτός τοὺς 'Agriánâs, τετραμμένον τῶν βαρβάρων πρὸς τὰς μηχανὰς
καὶ τοῦ ταύτη προσμαχομένου, λανθάνει κατὰ τοὺς ἐκρούς ἐξὸν ὄλγοις τὸ πρῶτον παρελθὼν ἐν τῇ πόλιν ἀναρρήθη
dὲ ἔδοξεν τῶν πυλῶν αἰς κατὰ τούτο τὸ χωρὸν ἠσαν, δέχεται καὶ οὗν ἄλλους στρατιώτας ἐπετῶς. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ βαρβαροὶ ἐξαιρέσθη ἦδη τῇ πόλιν αἰείθων ἐπτῷ αὐτῶν ἀμφι
25 'Alexandros δ勇于 ἐράταντας καὶ γίνεται προσβολῆ αὐτῶν καρτεράς καὶ βάλλεται λίθως αὐτὸς 'Alexandros βιαίως τῇ τε κεφαλῆς καὶ τοὺς αἰχένας καὶ Κράτειρας ἐπεμψάται καὶ τόλλων ἀλλοί τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἄλλα καὶ ὡς ἐξέστην ἐκ τῆς άγορᾶς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
2 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν τε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας Σκυθῶν στρατά ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς τὰς ὁχας τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τανάδους, οἱ πρὸς ύβριν τοῦ 'Alexandρου βαρβαροῦ ἔκαισανοντο, ὡς οὐκ ἐν τολμάσαντα 'Alexandρου ἰχασάνθη Σκυθῶν ἡ μαθῶνα
5 ἐν ὅτι περὶ τὸ διάφορον Σκύθαις τε καὶ τοῖς Ἀσιανοὶ βαρβάροις, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν παραγωγόνων ἐπενάδει διεμεῖνεν ἐπὶ αὐτοίς καὶ τὸς διδόρεας παρασχεῖσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ πόρῳ.
Ἀδεὶ μηχαναὶ ἀπὸ ξυνθήματο Ξήξ, ήμέντοις καὶ τοῖς Σκύθαις καταπετάντων ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδός καὶ ἐκείνος οἱ αὐτόν ἐπιτρώσκοντο ἐκ τῶν βέλων, δὲ δὲ διὰ τοῦ γέρου τε καὶ τοῦ ὄρηος διαμεῖνε θληγεῖς πίνακε ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕπους όι μὲν ἐξεπλάγησαν πρὸς τῶν βέλων τῆς διὰ μακρὸν ἀδειν καὶ ὧτι ἀνὴρ ἀγάθης αὐτοῖς τετελευτήκα, καὶ ὄλγον ἀνεγίρησαν ἀπὸ τῆς
10 Defeat of the Thracians. τὸν Κλείτον τῷ Δρωπίδον πάθημα, εἰ καὶ ὄλγον ύπερθανεί εὐράξημα, οὐκ ἐξὸ τοῦ καπηρὸν ἀφηγήσομαι. Διοισκούραι ἦθεν ὅλεον ἀλε-
5 ξανήροις, τόρροι δὲ τοῦ πότου προῖόντος,
(καὶ γὰρ καὶ τὰ τῶν πώλων ἦθεν ἁλεξάνδρου ἐς τὸ βαρβαρικότερον νεωτέριστο) ἀλλ’ ὑπὲρ τῶν Διοισκούρων λόγον ἐγγύνησα, καὶ τοῖς τῶν παράνοιας κολλακαὶ τῇ ἁλεξάνδρου κατ’ οὐδὲν ἤξειν συμβάλλειν ἁλεξάνδρου τε καὶ τοῖς 10 ἁλεξάνδρου ἐργοῖ τὸν Πολυδεύκη καὶ τὸν Κάστορα.
Χλείτος δὲ δήλος μὲν ἦν πάλαι ἦθεν ἁλεξάνδρου τῶν κολλακεύσαιν αὐτών τοῖς λόγοις τότε δὲ καὶ αὐτός πρὸς τοῦ οὗν παραγωγόνων οὐκ εἰς οὔτε εἰς τὸ θείον ἐπαίρει, οὔτε τὰ τῶν πάλαι ἱρῶν ἔργα ἐκφαινείσαντως χάριν ταῦτα 15 ἀξίων προστιθείναι ἁλεξάνδροι. εἰ ὡς γὰρ οὖν οὔτε τά ἁλεξάνδρου οὔτω τὰ μεγάλα καὶ θαμαστά, ὃς ἐκείνου ἐπαίρεσθαι οὔτε αὐτῶν μόνον γε καταπράξει αὐτά, ἀλλὰ
iv.] Selections from Arrian.
Selections from Arrian.

σὺν γέλωτι βαρβαρίζοντες πτυχνοῖς ἐκέλευον ἡγείσθην στρατιώτας Ἀλέξανδρον. οὕτως αὐτῷ ἐξαιρήσωσιν τὸ ὄρος, ὥσ τὸν γε 15 ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων οὐδεμίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ σφίζον ὀφθαλμά. Ἡνὶ δὲ ἐκήρυξεν Ἀλέξανδρος τῷ μὲν πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνει δώδεκα τάλαντα εἶναι τὸ γέφυρα. καὶ τοῦτο τὸ κήρυγμα παράξειον ἐπὶ μᾶλλον καὶ ἄλλως τοὺς Μακεδόνας ὀφρομένους.

Πασσάλου δὲ μικροῖς οὐδεμιοῦ, ὥσις αἰ σκιαλὰ κατασφύγεσαν αὐτοῖς, παρασκευάσατος, καὶ τοῦτος καλωδίως ἐκ λαύσῃν ἤσσος ἐκήρυχσαν τὴν νυκτὸς προορίζοντος κατὰ τὸ ἀποστρατοῦτον τὸ λαύσῃν ἐκήρυξαν τοὺς κατασφύγοντες μὲν εἰς τὴν γῆν, ἀνέλουκον σφίζοντος τοὺς ἐκῆρυξαν. καὶ τοῦτον 25 ὑποφέρον ἐκήρυξαν πλῆθος πλῆθος ἐκήρυξαν τὸν Κλειτοῦ τὴν τὴν 35 σαλατοῦ τὸν Κλειτοῦ ἀνακείειν.

Ἀπελθόν δὲ ἐς τὴν οὐράνη ὀδυρόμενος, τὸν Κλειτοῦ ὄνοματί ἀνακαλών, φοίνικα τῶν τοῖς φθόγκοι οὗ διέλειπεν σωματοφυλάκων τῶν, οἱ δὲ σώρισαν παρά τῶν φυλάκων τῶν καὶ τἀὐτῇ παῖσαν τὸν Κλειτοῦ ἀποκτεῖναι.

Ἀμα δὲ τῷ ἄρτῳ ὑποφαίνετο προῳάνεω ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν ἐν τῇ ᾿Οὐδανίᾳ πέτραν, ἐς ἐν τὸ πᾶλλε, καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄνθρωπον τῶν Σωματοφυλάκων, ὡς ἐπέτεει

The Sogdian rock. 

λαχαναὶ τῇ πέτρᾳ, καταλαμβάνει πάντῃ ἀποτόμον ἐν τῇ προφορῇ, στιξα τῇ ἐν τῇ προφορῇ, ἐπίκεισάν τους βαρβάρους ἡ αὐτῷ ἐξηγείγετο, δὲ ἐπετέει

5

δὲ τῷ ἄρτῳ ὑποφαίνετο προῳάνεω ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ᾿Οὐδανίᾳ πέτραν, ἐς ἐν τῷ πᾶλλε, καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄνθρωπον τῶν Σωματοφυλάκων, ὡς ἐπετέει
Selections from Arrian.

V.

'Εκ Βάκτρων δὲ ἐξήκοντος ἦδη τοῦ ἱρος προὐχόρει ὃς ἦτο 'Ἰνδοῖς, 'Ἀμύνταν ἀπολιποῦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν Βάκτρων καὶ ξύνων αὐτῷ ἱππεῖς μὲν τραχχίλους καὶ πεντακοσίους, πέζους δὲ μυρίους. ὑπερβαλλὼν δὲ τὸν Καῦσασον ἐν δέκα ἡμέραις ἀδίκετο ἢ 'Ἀλεξάνδρεαν πόλιν, τὴν κτίσθεναν ἐν Παρα-παμμασάβας ὦτε τὸ πρῶτον ἐπὶ Βάκτρων ἐστάλκετο, καὶ τὸν μὲν ὑπάρχον ὅποιος αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῆς πόλεως τότε ὑπάχθη 10 παραλύει τῆς ἀρχῆς, ὅτι ὅλος ξυμπεράσατο ἐδοξεῖ προσ- κατοικίζεις δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν περιοίκων τε καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιώτων ἀπέμαχοι ἦσαν ἐς τὴν 'Ἀλεξάνδρεαν Νικάνορα μὲν, ἕνα τῶν ἔταρχων, τὴν πόλιν αὐτὴν κοσμεῖν ἐκέλευσε σετράπην δὲ Τυριάσπην κατέστησε τῆς τοιούτης τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἑλλησπόντου ταῦτα ἐπὶ τὴν Κωφῆνα ποταμοῦ. ἀφικόμενος δὲ ἐς Νικάναι πόλιν καὶ τῇ 'Ἀθηνῆς πόλις προὐχόρει ὃς ἦτο τὸν Κωφῆνα, προπέμψας κήρυκα ὡς Ταξελα τε καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ, κατεύθυνε ἀπάντων ἄτοι δὲν κατωτός προσχρῄ. καὶ Ταξελας 20 τε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὑπάρχον ἀπῆτων, δώρα τὰ μέγιστα παρ' Ἰνδοῖς νομιζόμενα κοινοῦντες, καὶ τοὺς ἐλεύθερα δώσαντες ἐφικαν τοὺς παρὰ σφετῶν ὄντας, ἄριθμὸν δὲν πέντε καὶ ἐκάςαν. Ἐνθα δὴ διελθὼν τῆς στρατιῶν Ἱφαστῖανα μὲν καὶ Περδίκκαν ἐκπέμ- πετε ὡς ἦτο τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμοῦ. ὡς δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπανεύθεν 25 ἠδὴ ὅσα ἔστι τὸ ἥρεμος τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἐπὶ 'Ἀλεξάνδρου ἑτέτακτο.

BOOK V.

Ὁ δὲ Ἰνδός ποταμὸς μέγιστος ποταμῶν ὅστι τῶν κατὰ τὴν 'Ασίαν τε καὶ τὴν Εὐρώπην, πλὴν Γάγγου, καὶ αἱ πηγαὶ εἰσὶν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Παραμμασάβου ἡ Καῦσασος, καὶ ἐκδιώκοντι 5 εἰς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν τὴν κατὰ Ἰνδοῖς ὡς ἐπὶ νότον

V.

Alexander reaches the Hydaspes.

Ἐπὶ ἑκεῖνα γὰρ τοῦ 'Ὑδαστοῦ Πάρος αὐτῷ εἶναι ἡγουμένα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάρη, ἤγοικος ἐργεῖν τοῦ πόλου αὖ ἢ ἐργαντὶ ἐπιτίθησα. τὰῦτα ἡγουμένη Ἀλεξάνδρος, Κοῦνοι μὲν τὸν Πολεμοκράτους πάμφας ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸν Ίνδοῦ ποταμὸν τὰ πλοῖα ἴσα παρασκεύασαν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τοῦ πόλου τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἐντεῦθεν καλεῖ τις. ἔρεων ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν 'Ὑδαστὴν
Selections from Arrian. [v.

36  Selections from Arrian.  37

Porus is ready for him.

5 Πάρος καταστραπτοπεδεύκει προς τῇ ὀχήθῃ τοῦ Ὑδάσπου, ἐγγύμ Άλεξάνδρος ἀδύνατος ἦν περάσαι ὑπὸ πλῆθους τῶν ἐλεφάντων καὶ ὁποίοι τῇ διαμακριμένῃ τῇ καὶ ἀκρίβως ἀπλαιμένη ἑκάβενοιν αὐτοῦ ἐπιθέσεσθαι ἔμελλεν; οὐ τῇ ὑποῖοι οὐκ ἦν ἑδόκουν αὐτῷ ἐθέλησαν οὐδὲ ἐπηρίζαν τῆς ὀχήθης τῆς σέραν, προσκεκλῆντον σφίναν εὐθὺς τῶν ἐλεφάντων καὶ τῇ ὁψεί ἄμα καὶ τῇ φωνῇ φαβορύντων, οὐδὲ ἢ ἀπὸ πρὸς τὸν κατά τὸν πόρον, ἀλλ’ ἐκπήδην γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὑπὲρ ἀφορῶντες πέραν τοὺς ἐλεφάντας καὶ τῇ ὑποίοι γνινόμενοι κλίψαν οὐκ ἔπεσεν τῇ διάσβασιν.

"Ἤκρα ἢν ἀνέχουσα τῆς ὀχήθης τοῦ Ὑδάσπου, ἵνα ἐπικαμπτῶν ὁ ποταμὸς λόγου ἂξιος, αὐτῇ διὰ διὰ γλῶσσαν πανττοιον διήνυξαν καὶ κατ’ αὐτὴν νήσος ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ ὑλόθες της καὶ ἀστίβης ἵνα ἑρίζασιν. τάσην καταπαθῶν τὴν

20 νῆσον κατανεκρῆ τῆς ἄκρας, ἀμφότερα ὑλόθες τὰ χώρα καὶ οὐ κρύφη τῆς διαβάσασθαι τῆς ἐπιχειρήσεως, ταύτῃ ἠγὼ διαβιβάζον τῶν στρατῶν.

Άλεξάνδρος δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν ἦγεν ἄρανος, πολὺ τὰ ἄτεχθοι τῆς ὀχήθης, τοῦ μὴ καταφαίνει οἷον ἄγων ἐκ τῆς νῆσος καὶ τὴν ἄκραν ἔθεσεν διαβιβάζεται αὐτῷ ἢν ἐγνωσμένον. καὶ ἐντάθα ἐπηρίζοντο τῆς νυκτὸς αὐτῷ διαφέρεται τῆς κάρφης ἐκ πολλοῦ ὥθη θαρπινευμένης καὶ κατερπάσαντο ἐκ ακρίβειαν ὑπὸ τῇ ὑπὸ ὑπὸ τῆς νυκτὸς ἀλάσαν ἐπηρίζεται. ταύτῃ καὶ τὸ ἄλλον τὸ ἐπεισκεῖν τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ ἐπιχειρησίς ἢ ἐς τὴν

Διάβασιν οὐ φανερὰ κατέστη τῷ κτύπῳ τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν ὄπλων 30 καὶ τῷ θρόβῳ τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν παραγελμάτων τῶν τε βροντῶν καὶ τοῦ ὁμίχλου ἀντιπαταγοντῶν. ὑπὸ δὲ τήν ἑκ τοῦ ὁμίχλου καὶ ὁ ὁμίχλος κεκομίστη. καὶ ἡ μὲν ἀλλ’ στραταὶ αὐτῷ ἡ ὑποίκη τῶν διερθέων ἐπιβάσα καὶ δῶνς τῶν πεζῶν, τὰ πλοίαν ἐξέχετο ἐπέρα κατὰ τὴν νῆσον, ὡς μὴ 35 πρόσθεν ὀφθέειν πρὸς τῶν σκοπῶν τῶν ἐκ Πάρου καταστήκτων πρὶν παραλάλαται τὴν νῆσον ἄλογον ἐπὶ ἀπέχαιρα τῆς ὀχήθης.

Αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπηρίζα τριακοντόρων ἐπέρα. ὡς δὲ τῆς νῆσου παραλάλαξεν ἢ στραταὶ, φανερῶς ἢ ὁπὰ ἐπέχον τῇ ὀχήθῃ καὶ 40 οἱ σκόποι καταδύετε αὐτῶν τῇ ὁμήρῳ ὡς ἐκάστοις τάχους οἱ ὑποί οἶχων ἠλαυνον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Πάρον.

Καὶ τὸν ξέπεμψεν ὁ Πάρος τόν παῖδα, δισχείλιοι ἦπειρας 4 ἄγονα ἄρματα δὲ ἐκατον καὶ ἐκοσι’ ἐβθή δὲ περάσαις Άλεξανδρός. λέγεται δὲ ἦπειρας μὲν πεσεῖν ἐς τετρακοσίων, πεσεῖν δὲ καὶ τοῦ Πάρου τόν παιδὰ. δὲ ἄρματα αὐτοὺς ὑποίου ἀλώνει ἐν τῇ ἀποχαιρησθεὶς βαρέα γυνώμενα καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἐργῷ ὑπὸ πτηλοῦ ἄρχεια.

"Ἡδὸ τε ἤντος βέλους ἐγγυνετο καὶ Άλεξάνδρος ἐφήκεν ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἰνδων τοὺς ἱπποτοξίτας, ὅταν ἦν χλίλως, ὡς ταράζε τοὺς The engagement. 10 ταύτῃ ἐφεστηκότας τῶν πολεμίων τῇ πυκνότητὶ τῶν τοιοεμάτων τὰ τῶν ὑπότο τῇ ἐπελάσει, καὶ αὐτός δὲ τὸν ἔπαιρευκανον ὑπὸ τοῦ εὐώνυμον τῶν βαρβάρων, κατὰ κέρας ἐπὶ ταπαγεμένοις ἔμβαλεν σπουδὴν ποιομένος, πρὶν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἐκταθή αὐτοῖς τὴν ἑπότον.

Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἰνδων τοὺς ἑπείρας πάντοθεν ἐξαλλασσάνθητοι παρίσπευκοι Άλεξάνδρῳ ἀντιπατρεῖς γεγονότες τῇ ἁλάσει, καὶ οἱ περὶ Κούνον, ὡς παρηχυλείτο, κατόπιν αὐτοῖς ἐπιθάνοντο. ταύτα ἐξαλλάσσετο οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἀμφιστόμοι ἡμαγκάσθησαν ποιῆσαι 20
τὴν τάξιν τῆς ἕπου, τὴν μὲν ὡς ἐν Ἀλέξανδρου τὴν πολλὴν 
τε καὶ κρασίνην· οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ Καισάρειαν τε καὶ τοὺς ἁμα τούτω 
ἐπιστρέφον, καὶ Ὅλικερ κόσμῳ τοῖς καὶ αὐτῶν, 25 ὅστις οὐδὲν 
τὴν ἐμβολὴν ἔδειξατο οἱ Ἰνδοί, ἀλλὰ καταρρίπθησαν, ἀστερὰ 
εἴς τέχνης τοίς ἐπιλάματά τούς ἐλεφάντας. τὸν τοὺς 
ἱππέων, οὐδὲ ἐν στενῷ περὶ τὸς ἑλέφαντας ἐλούμμων, 
κολάς οὐ οἰκονομοῖς καὶ οἱ ἤγεμόνες τῶν 
ἐλεφάντων οἱ πόλοι καταρρισμένοι ἦσαν, ἀλλὰ αὐτῶν, οἱ ἑλέφαντας τὰ 
μὲν μετακεφαλέοι, τα δὲ ὅπερ τοὺς τούς καὶ ἐρήμωσα 
ημέρους σκέφτεται διακε 
κριμένον ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἦσαν· ἀλλ’ οὖν δὲ ἐν ἐν τού 
ἐκφένες φίλους τοῖς ὁμοίως καὶ πολεμίως προσφερόμενοι πάντα 
τρόπου εξῆλθον τε καὶ κατεξάνεται καὶ κατέκαινον· ἀλλ’ οἱ 35 
μὲν Μακεδόνες, ὃ ἐν εὐθυμίας τε καὶ κατὰ γνώμην τῆς 
σφῶν προσφερόμενοι τοῖς θερίους, ὡς μὲν ἐπιθέοντο εἰκών, 
ἀποσκεύασμαι δὲ εἴχοντες ἐπεκατοχτενόντες· οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ ἐν 
αὐτῶς ἀναπαραστάσαις τὰ πλεῖον ὅσα πρὸς ἔκεινων ἐβλάπτοντο. 
ὡς δὲ καμάρτηρι τὰ ἡ τῆς θηρίας καὶ οὐκέτα αὐτοῦς ἐφρούμεναι 
40 αἱ ἐκδρομαι ἐγγύττατο, ἀλλὰ συντρίγων μόνον διαχρόνια 
ὡσπερ αὐτοὶ προ/Publications/لأ/كأس/1365557230/3/39.png

v.] Selections from Arrian. 39

ἐλέφαντα. καὶ Ὅλικερ κόσμῳ τοῖς καὶ ἐγενάζων 
ἀνδρα ἱππῶν εἰς τῇ μάχῃ σώσασα ἐπετρέπθησαν· 
Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤγερον Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ προϋπεπείσατο, καὶ 
ἐπετρέπθης τὸν ἔπον τὸ τοῦ μέγασος ἐπιστᾶσαν, ὑπὸ πάντα 10 
πῆχες μέλιστα ἑξαράβησαν, καὶ τὸ κάλλος τοῦ Πάρου καὶ 
οἱ οὐ δεδουλώμενοι τῇ γνώμῃ ὑποίκητον. ἦν δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος 
πρῶτος προσεπιτοὐν αὐτῶν λέγεις ἐκλέγεις δὲ τοῖς γενέσθαι ἔδειλ. 
Πάρου δὲ ἀποκρίνομαι λόγος, ὅτι βασιλείως μοι χρήσαι, 15 
ὅ Ἀλέξανδρε, καὶ Ὅλικερ κόσμῳ τῷ λόγῳ, τοῦτο μὲν 
ἐσται σοι, ὅ Πάρω, ἔφη, ἵπποι ἐνεκα· σὺ δὲ σαυτοῦ ἐνέκα. 
ὁ δὲ σιωρός ἔδει λόγον τὸν ἐναθάντα τῆς 
τοῖς ἀρχὴς τοῦ Πάρου τῶν τοῦ αὐτοῦ Ἰνδῶν ἐδοκεῖ 
καὶ ἄλλαν 20 
ἐτού χρόνον πρὸς τῇ πάλαι οἴδα τῇ πλείον ἐπερχεῖν 
προοίμηκε.

"ἀνά δὲ η μάχη ἐννυκεῖ, καὶ οὐνὶς ὁμημέρες ἐπέρασε τὸν Ὁ 
Τύλατον ποταμὸν πόλεις ἐκτικεῖν Ἀλέξανδρος. καὶ τὴν 
μὲν Νίκαιαν τῆς νίκης τῆς κατ’ Ἰνδῶν ἔπον ἐτούτου ἐνάσφαλε 
τῇ τοῦ Πάρου τοῦ Ποταμοῦ τῆς μνήμης, δὲ ἀπέθανεν αὐτοῦ, οὐ 
βλέπουσα πρὸς ὁδον, ἀλλ’ ὑπὸ 5 
καμάτου τε καὶ ἥλικις. ἦν γὰρ ἀμφὸτεροῖς ἐκεῖνοι, 
καμάταιροι ὁμοίων, πολλά δὲ πρὸς ἐπιθετικαὶ γυμναῖοι 
τε καὶ συγκυκλοφορεῖται Ὅλικερος, ἀναβαίνομεν τοὺς 
ἀνθρώπους. καὶ μεγάλας καὶ τὸν θυμὸν γενάαι. 10 
συμμείζων δὲ οἱ ἄρας κεφαλὴ ἐγκεφαλαμμένη, ἐφ’ ὑπὸ 
καὶ τὸν ἄσωμα τοῦτο ἔγονοις ὧν ἐφερεν.

Κατασκεύασε δὲ τὴν πόλιν τῶν Καταλάνων, ἐπί τοῦ Ἐπανομ 7 
ποταμῷ προοίμηκε. τὸ δὲ δὴ πέραν τοῦ Ἐπανομτοῦ 
ἐπιθετικαὶ τὴν ἐναθάντας ἐκατεραμοῦν 
καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἐκάθοις μὲν γῆς ἐφερε. 15 
γενάωσα δὲ τὰ πολέμα καὶ ἔλα τὸ ἔθω 
δὲ σφῶν ἐν κόσμῳ πολιτεύοντας. πλήθος τοῦ ἑλέφαντον
Selections from Arrian.

40 Selections from Arrian. [v.

The soldiers murmured.

10 Macedonians did, however, resist and, with the rest of the army, retreated. Alexander did not permit this. He sent aid to the Macedonians, and they were able to hold out. Alexander sailed down the Hydaspes.

BOOK VI.

Alexander sailed down the Hydaspes. When he arrived, he saw that the situation was critical. He decided to attack the enemy. The soldiers were tired, but they were determined to win.

1 Alexander sailed down the Hydaspes. When he arrived, he saw that the situation was critical. He decided to attack the enemy. The soldiers were tired, but they were determined to win.

10] κατεστη ἐς οὐδὲν, πρὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ ῥαί ὄρθωθεν· αὐτὸς δὲ μακρινός οὐχ ὕπαθεν ἀπῆλθεν· καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ὅπου αὐτοὶ, πλαγιότερον ἔν τε ὅπως γενομένους, συνετρίβοντο, ὡσπερ ἐν ἑγκαταληφθηκόντων ὑπὸ τοῦ ῥαίτος ὃ βλέποντον αὐτὰς μετεωρίζοντας, ὡς πολλὰς μὲν πονήσας τὸν νεῶν, δυὸ δὲ δὴ περιπετείας ἀπὸσακεῖς αὐτὰς τε διαφθορὴν καὶ τῶν ἐμπλεόντων ἐν αὐταῖς πολλοῖς.

3 'Αλέξανδρος δὲ ἄγαλμα διὰ γῆς ἄνδρου ὡς ἐπὶ Μαλλίους στρατίαν ἦγεν, Ἠγίασιν Ἰνδικόν Ἰνδῶν τῶν αὐτοῦ τῶν, καὶ τῆς πρῶτης καταστροφῆς ὑπὸ γεγονοῦσας ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμιστών, διότι τῆς ἡμέρας τὸ ἐπὶ ὑπολείψαντα καὶ τῆς νύκτας ἐπὶ τῆς τέσσαρας μίλιας σταδίους ἕως ἡμέρας πρὸς πόλιν ἄρχεται. ἦν εἰς ἐμπεφυγές πολλοὶ τῶν Μαλλίων. οι δὲ οὕτως ὑπήκοον διὰ τῆς ἀνδρὸς ἡπείρας ἐπὶ σφαῖρας Ἀλέξανδρον ἐξες τῆς πόλεως οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ ἄνοιξαν ἡμᾶς. τούτως μὲν δὴ προφθαρίσαντες ἐπιστράτησαν τοὺς μὲν πολλοὺς ἀπέκτανεν αὐτῶν οὖσα εἰς ἄλλην, οὐ μὴν ἀνάπλουσα προσπροσνατεύτως.

15 αὐτὸς δὲ ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην τῶν Μαλλίων πόλιν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἀλλῶν πόλεων ἐμπεφυγές αὐτῷ ἐξαειράται. Αὐτὸς δὲ βαλλόθηται διὰ τοῦ ὑπάρκσιος· ὡς τὸ στάθησας· τομέας ὑπὸ τῶν μαστῶν, ὡστε καὶ τομέας ὑπὸ τοῦ τραύματος· ἐξεπετυχείτο. ο ὁ δὲ, ἕσετε ἐπὶ τοῦ πολέμου Ἀλέξανδρος αὐτῷ τοῦ αἵματος, καὶ καταρρέων ἠμένος· πολλοὶ δὲ δὴ τοῦ αἵματος καὶ ἀράβων, οὐ δὲ ἐμπεφυγαν, ἐκφεύγαν, ἱλαγός τὸν καὶ λειτουργίαν κατέσχε τὰς καὶ πίπτει αὐτοῦ· ἐπὶ τὴν ἀστήρα εὐνάμονα.

Ἐν θεῖον κατέληπεν εἰς τὰς Πάτταλα, ὡσπερ σχίζεται 4 τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὸ ὅριον δὲ δὺ ρυπαθείς μεγάλους καὶ οὕτων ἀμφότεροι σώζουσιν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὸν ὄρον ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν βάσανον· ἤπειρον ναῦσταθμον διὰ ταῖς νεωτάκοις ἐπί τοὺς Ἀλέξανδρος· 5 ὡς δὲ προεξεσχόρησεν αὐτὸ τῷ ἔργῳ, ὃ δὲ καταπληθεῖς ἐπανειλήμμενον θηρίον τοῦ ἀνεπίστευτος τοῦ ἰδίου του πολέμου. τοῦ Ἁλεξάνδρου, τοῦ ἃ πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἐνεπέλεγεν. οὐκ ἕξαντες δὲ αὐτῷ ἡμέραν τοῦ πλοίου, ὅτε τοιαύτας εἰς τὴν θάνατον. οὐκ ἔχοιν δὲ αὐτῷ ἡμέραν τοῦ πλοίου, ὅτε τοιαύτας εἰς τὴν θάνατον.
Selections from Arrian.

44 Selections from Arrian.  [vi.

λαχοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἦν ἀλλὰ νῦκτωρ ἤμαγκάζοντο τὴν 15 πολλὴν πορεύεσθαι καὶ προσωτέρω ἀπὸ θαλάσσης.

Καὶ λέγουσιν οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ἐγγυγραφάντων τὰ ἁμφ' Ο' Ἀλέξανδρον όθε δὲ τὰ ἔσπερα ἤτα ἐγκατάγεται αὐτὸ καὶ Ἀσίαν ἢ στρατιὰ ἐμφάνισθη, ἦν τοῖς τρίτῳ πάντως, τὸ γὰρ καίμ οὐκ ἐπέδραν καὶ τὸ ἰδίας τὴν ἄφορος πολλὴν τῆς στρατιάς διαδόθη καὶ μάλιστα, διὸ τὰ ὑποχύπνοια, ταύτα μὲν ὅτι τοῦ βάζου τῆς συμμού καὶ τῆς κηνίας, ὅτι κεκαιμένη ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ δὲ καὶ δύσις ἀπόλλυται, καὶ γὰρ καὶ γηλοφίας ἐπίτυγχαν οὐράδοις συμμοῦ βαθείας.

Τῶν δὲ δὲ ὑποχύπνων πολὺς ὁ φόρος καὶ ἐκόσιος τῇ 10 στρατιᾷ ἐγκατέστη εὐνούντες, γάρ, ὅπως ἐπιτείλουσι σφάζει τὰς συντάκτας καὶ τῶν ἔπειται τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀποσταθεῖσι καὶ τῶν ἡμέρων τὰ κρέα ἐστιν, καὶ ἔλεγεν δῆμους ἀποθανεῖν αὐτοῦ ὁ ὑπὸ καμάτου ἐκείγοντας. οὔκδεν οὖς κάποιον κατεὶς τῆς στρατιάς οὐδέ τοῖς διὰ 15 κάματον ὑπολειπομένους ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς ἄγους ἐτεὶ ἣν εὑρόμενο ἀπορία τοὺς ὑποχύπνων καὶ ὅτι τὰς ἀμάξας αὐτοῖς κατέκοπτον, ἀπόρους οὖς αὐτοῖς ὑπὸ βάζους τῆς συμμοῦ ἀγενάσθαι καὶ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις σταθομένοι διὰ ταίτα ἐξηγοῦσεν κατήγαζον οὓς βραχυτάτας ἔναι τῶν ὁδῶν, ἀλλὰ τὰς δὲ εὐποροῦσας τοὺς ζύγεσθαι, καὶ οὕτως οἷς κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς ὑπελεῖψε τούτῳ ὕποκρίτες καὶ κατὰ τὸ ὑπό τοῦ πάντως προδώμῳ τοῖς 25 ἑκάστοις δὲ ἀνάγκη ἠμελεῖτο, οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ καμάτου καὶ κατὰ τῷ δῆμους οὕς ἀντέχοντες καὶ οὕτως οἷς ἀξιόνθες οὓς ἦν ὀξέας ἥμαρτον, οἷς χρίστως ὑπελεῖπεν, ἀστέρες ἀπειλοῦσαν, καὶ ὅτι μὲν εἴοικεν πολὺ τῆς στρατιάς διαγόρασθαι, ἡμέρας ἀπεριτότατος τοὺς ζύγεσθαι, καὶ οὕτως διὰ ταῖς ὁδοῖς ἀγενάσθαι ἐκεῖνος.
Selections from Arrian. [vi.]

Alexander’s self-restraint and chivalry.

10 'Alexander, when he was in a quandary about some matter, he would say, 'I will not decide until the council has convened.' And when the council had been convened, if the decision was not to his liking, he would leave it open until the next council meeting. This was how he conducted himself.

15 When he returned from the council meeting, he would go to his tent and compose his thoughts. He would think about what had occurred in the council, and he would make notes of what he wanted to do.

BOOK VII.

7 Alexander had a number of wives to choose from. He was very particular about choosing a wife, and he was often seen with his wife.

10 'Vasilius, the Parthian, was so clever that he could not be fooled. He always said, 'I will not do anything until I have consulted with my council.' And when the council had been called, if the decision was not to his liking, he would leave it open until the next council meeting. This was how he conducted himself.

15 When he returned from the council meeting, he would go to his tent and compose his thoughts. He would think about what had occurred in the council, and he would make notes of what he wanted to do.
selections from arrian. vii.

υμᾶς γε, ἐφ ή, ἐξμπαντας ἐμαυτῷ τίθεμαι συγγενεῖς καὶ τό 15 γε ἀπὸ τοῦτον οὐτω καλῶς. ταῦτα εἰπόταν προσέλθων ὁ Καλλινής τε ἐφήλησεν καὶ ὡστὶς ἄλλος ψηλῶς ἤθλη. καὶ οὗτος δὴ ἀναλάβοντες τό ὀπλα βοώντες τε καὶ παιανίζοντες ὁ το στρατοπέδου ἀπῆςαν.

Παρελθόντι δ' αὐτῷ ἐς Βαβυλώνα προσβείαν παρὰ τῶν 4 Ἐλλήνων ἑντύχων, ὑπέρ ότων μὲν ἐκαστὸν προσφορεβομένου οὐκ ἀναγέγραται. δοκεῖν δ' ἔμοιγε αἰ πολλαὶ στεφανοῦντων τε αὐτῶν ᾗ παντὶ ἐπαινοῦντων ἐπὶ ταῖς νῦκαι τῶς τέ 5 ἄλλαις καὶ μᾶλιστα ταῖς Ἰηδικαῖς, καὶ ὡτὶ σῶσα ἐς Ἰνδῶν ἐπανήκεια χαίρειν φασκόντων τε καὶ τὰ ἐκότα τιμήσας ἀποσπήμαται ὄρει σωλή. ὅσους δὲ ἀνδράσις ἡ ὡσ ἀγάλματα ἢ ἡ δι τὸ ἄλλα ἀνάμνεσι ἐκ τῆς Ἐλλάδος ᾽Αρής ἀνεκόμισεν ἐς Βαβυλώνα ἢ ἐς 10 Παπαγάδος ἢ ἐς Σοῦτα ἢ ὡτὶ ἄλλῃ τῆς Ἀσίας, ταῦτα δούναι αἴνει τῶς προσβείες. ταῖς Ἀρμοδίου καὶ ᾽Αρμο- τογεῖσονοι ἐκδόσας τῶς χαλκάς οὕτω λέγεται ἀπενεχθῇ ὄρισε ἐς Ἀθήνας.

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ αὐτῷ Ἡδῆ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔγγυς ἢν τό τέλος. καὶ 5 ἀβασιλεῖου ἐφημεριῶς ὃ δὲ ἐξούσι. πλέον παρὰ Μηδίω τῶν ἐτάρων τινι αὐτὸν καμά- σαντα: ἔπειτα ἐξαναστάται καὶ λουσά- μενον καθαίρει τα καὶ αὐτώς δηοῦντες παρὰ Μηδίω καὶ αὐτός 10 πλέον πόρρῳ τῶν νυκτῶν ἀπαλλαξθέντα δὲ τοῦ πάντο λύπασθαι: καὶ λουσάμενον ὅλγον το ἐφημερεῖν καὶ καθαίρειν αὐτὸν, ὡτὶ ἡ ἐπάργεραν ἐκκομισθήναι δὲ ἐπὶ κλῖνής πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ θύσαν ὅς νόμος ἐς ἐκάστη ἡμέρα, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπέθεται κατακείσαι ἐν τῷ ἀνδράω ἐγια ἐπὶ κνέφας ἐν τῷ ὀπλό πάρα 10 10 τῶν ἐκμοῦ παραγγέλειν ὑπὲρ τῆς πορείας καὶ τοῦ πλοῦτο, τοὺς μὲν ὡς πεζῷ ἱοῦντας παρακενδεδθοῦν ἐς τεταρτῆν ἠμέραν, τοὺς δὲ ἀμαίποντας ὑς ὡς εἰς πέμπτῃν ἡμέραν ἐκείθεν. δὲ κατακομισθήναι ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης ὡς ἐπὶ τῶν σπατομέν, καὶ ἐπιβίαντα πλοῦτο διαπλάσαται πέραν 15
Selections from Arrian.  [vii.

tου ποταμοῦ ἐσ τ'ν παράδεισον, κάκει αὖθις λουσάμενον ἀναπαύεσθαι.
Οὕτως ἐν ταῖς ἐφημερίσι ταῖς βασιλείοις ἀναγέγραπται,
καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὡς οἱ στρατιῶται ἐπόθησαν ἵδεν αὐτῶν, οἱ
μὲν, ὡς ἔσχοτα ἐπὶ ἱδομὲν· οἱ δὲ, ὡς τεθνηκέναι ἢδη ἔξεχο
λετο, ἐπικρύπτεσθαι δὲ αὐτοῦ ἐντόπιον πρὸς τὸν σωματοφυ
λάκον τὸν θάνατον, ὡς ἐγωγε δοκῶ· τοὺς πολλοὺς δὲ Ἰππὸ
pίνδους καὶ πόθου τοῦ βασιλέως βίασάσθαι ἱδεῖν Ἀλέξανδρον,
tὸν δὲ ἄψων μὲν εἶναι λέγουσι παραπομπομάθης τῆς στρα-
τιᾶς· δεξιοῦσθαι δὲ ὡς ἐκάστους τὴν τὴν κεφαλῆν ἑπαίροντα
μόνες καὶ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπισημαίνοντα.
'Εστελεύτα μὲν δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος τῇ τετάρτῃ καὶ δεκάτῃ καὶ
ἐκατοστῇ Ὀλυμπιάδι ἐπὶ Ἡγησίου ἀρχοντὸς
Hec. B.C. 323. Ἀθηνησίων· ἱβίῳ δὲ δόο καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη
καὶ τοῦ τρίτου μήνας ἐπέλαβεν ὅκτω, ὡς
λέγει Ἀριστοτέβουλος· ἐβασάλευσε δὲ δώδεκα ἔτη καὶ τοὺς
ὅκτῳ τούτους μήνας.

EXERCISES.

Book I.

1. (a) Alexander was Philip's son.
(b) Alexander asked the Greeks for the leadership against Persia, and made preparations
for the expedition.
(c) They answered that their custom was to lead others.
2. (a) Certain exiles invited them in.
(b) While they asserted that Alexander was dead,
he was leading his forces into Boeotia.
(c) Alexander thought that the rumour was being
spread with a view to revolt.
(d) They revolted from the Thebans.
3. (a) To start from Thebes.
(b) On the following day he sent out some
archers, but did not attack the walls.
(c) Those who had invited the exiles nevertheless
(ὁμολογοῦσι) obtained pardon from the king
(βασιλεύσ).  
(d) Urge on the people without delay (delaying
nothing).
4. (a) They were defending themselves.
   (b) The Thebans of old time hated (δυ’ εχθρας εχειν) the Plataeans; now the Plataeans were able to slaughter the Thebans.
   (c) As the walls were deserted, the enemy, with a cry, dashed into the city.
   (d) Alexander gave orders for the archers to advance, but kept his chief archer back.
   (e) Pindar was held in honour by the king.
   (f) We could not shut the gates before (φθάνω) the rout began (ἀρχαιοποιεῖν).

5. (a) Offer at the shrine thy gifts (δῶρα), and sacrifice to Zeus.
   (b) They used (χρύσωμα, w. dat.) merchant-ships for the passage.
   (c) The story holds that he got his army across the Hellespont in triremes.
   (d) He poured a libation from a cup when he started from Europe.

6. (a) To form in line.
   (b) We cannot attempt the engagement without risk.
   (c) If the enemy shall fall upon us, we shall not get across.
   (d) The river prevented his crossing.
   (e) Do not regard this as agreeable with honour.

7. (a) The cavalry were marshalled in silence.
   (b) At the first onset they were thrust aside from the bank of the river, and so took to flight (φεύγω).

(c) Follow me, and show yourselves to be brave men.
(d) Alexander spied him, rode straight at him and smote him with a battle-axe.
(e) Things will go better with us if we use our pikes instead of our javelins.
(f) The broken spear was shattered from behind, and Alexander would have been struck down had not his friend (ἔταλαι) anticipated the assailant.
(g) The inhabitants of Asia sent an offering to Athene.

8. (a) Towards Ephesus.
   (b) These matters had been arranged long before.
   (c) About midnight he began his advance towards Halicarnassus.
   (d) He took Sardis by storm.
   (e) To bury the dead after a battle is a matter of great moment (use παρά and acc.).

---

Book II.

1. (a) Midas, whom they had made king, brought the dispute to an end.
   (b) He offered to the gods, as thank-offering, on the following day, the pole of the waggon.
   (c) Midas was in a difficulty.
   (d) I cannot overlook the fulfilment of the oracle.
   (e) They say that Alexander cut instead of untying the knot.
2. (a) Alexander was taken ill at Tarsus, and sent for (μεταπέμπομαι) a doctor, who thought at first that he would not live.

(b) Alexander was told to be on his guard against this doctor.

(c) But as he was not naturally (φόνει) suspicious, he drank the medicine while the doctor was reading the letter.

3. (a) Dareius was wrong in his judgment, and thought that the enemy would not advance farther.

(b) His associates said that his cavalry would trample the Macedonians under foot.

(c) There are great prizes, he said, which I will hand over to those who will endure the danger [lit. will endure (ἀνέχομαι) running a risk].

4. (a) Show yourselves brave men.

(b) They advanced at the double.

(c) A shout was raised, and to prevent any part of the phalanx bulging, he began the attack slowly.

(d) We did not run away until (πρῶν) we had seen Dareius doing so. We will not run away until there is a signal rout. (See Goodwin, § 240.)

(e) Let us not fall short of the reputation of our phalanx.

(f) The Persians began to give way when the Macedonians had outflanked them, after they had driven them back from the river.

5. (a) They wept over the death of his wife and mother.

(b) Go and say that Dareius has fled.

(c) The king was not taken by Alexander, because night came on.

(d) We heard, as we approached, a sound of mourning.

6. (a) In my dream methought I was Hercules.

(b) Their navy is a large one, and this is much to their advantage in the present circumstances.

(c) We have many ships left and can command the sea.

(d) If they transfer the seat of war to Greece, it is to be expected (εἰκός) that the Athenians will attack us.

7. When a navy had been collected from Cyprus, Tyre was taken, and in the assault about four hundred men died.

8. (a) He married the daughter of the king.

(b) He said that if he wished to marry, he could marry.

(c) All the land is mine.

(d) On these terms I will end the war, and run no further risk.

9. (a) It is one hundred furlongs away from the sea.

(b) The name of the city is Gaza; Alexander determined to attack it, though it is surrounded by a strong wall.

(c) He was wounded, though for a long time (διὰ μακρόθε) he remained out of range.

(d) He felt sure that the city could never be taken.
Exercises.

Book III.

1. (a) He anchored near a city called after himself.
   (b) The place is favourable, and I am anxious to mark out the lines of the city which I intend \( \mu \varepsilon \lambda \lambda \omega \) to build.

2. (a) When the sand is blown far and wide by the south wind, we cannot conjecture where the track is.
   (b) He marched into Egypt to consult the oracle of Ammon in the desert.
   (c) Rumour says that his guides were snakes or ravens.

3. (a) If you taste it you will find that it is at its greatest heat in the morning.
   (b) These things are to my mind, but they are not like anything which I have heard before.

4. (a) They started at once, fearing that they would be attacked.
   (b) Alexander crossed over by the bridge, and captured some spies on the opposite bank.
   (c) I intend to stop you if you advance to the Tigris.
   (d) He was put in command of the passage of the river with two thousand mercenaries.

5. (a) How far is Arbela from Gaugamela? About six hundred furlongs.
   (b) Now when Alexander had been informed by the spies of Dareius' position, he started by night and at daybreak came to close quarters with the Persians.

6. (a) The entire left was commanded by Parmenio.
   (b) On the left were the cavalry, while the Thracians were left in command of the baggage-waggons.
   (c) Close to the front line were the Paeonians, under the command of Ariston.
   (d) They attacked them in flank.

7. (a) Whenever the chariots charged.
   (b) The Macedonian phalanx alarmed \( \phi \omega \beta \varepsilon \omega \) the king, as it broke through his ranks.
   (c) He advanced, thinking that he would take Dareius.
   (d) The elephants were all taken.
   (e) The riders were dragged down from the chariots and put to death; so they were disappointed of their hope of throwing the phalanx into confusion.

8. (a) Alexander's contingent cut down those mountaineers who fled to the hills.
   (b) Alexander was holding a torch-race after his victory.
   (c) They prevented his passing.

9. (a) He signalled by note of the trumpets.
   (b) They fled without coming to close quarters.
   (c) The archers had been told to go round by another path, and then to make an assault upon the wall.
   (d) Dareius, when his palace had been burnt, gathered together such forces as he could and remained where he was.
Exercises.

10. (a) If you wish to engage with me, give in your name.
   (b) On the next day, though his troops were nearly (σχεδόν) worn out, he still pursued vigorously.
   (c) When Dareius was dead he was buried in a royal tomb.

11. (a) The road leads to Hyrcania.
    (b) I declare myself king of this land.

12. (a) They had to go a long way to find materials for the bridge.
    (b) We must see that the water does not penetrate into the hides, and prevent our crossing the stream.
    (c) As he passed along he won over many tribes, especially (καὶ ὅ̓ς καὶ) the Indians.

13. (a) He surrounded the village with his cavalry, and gave orders that those in it should surrender Bessus.
    (b) Bessus was bound and scourged, and sent away to die.

Book IV.

1. (a) They got into the city.
   (b) Our idea was to bring up the engines and breach the walls and then drive out the barbarians.
   (c) Kraterus was wounded in the shoulder (ἀμφος) by a stone from the engines.

2. (a) The Asiatic Scythians derided the king.
   (b) He was in command of the light-armed troops.
   (c) The number of captives was a thousand.
   (d) They said that it made a great difference to them to lose their leader, and that they were annoyed by the long range of the missiles.

3. (a) Kleitus, my best friend, I have killed; for three days I will taste no food.
   (b) A thankless favour.
   (c) It was clear that he was excited by the dispute about Pollux and Castor.

4. (a) You may go away safe and sound.
   (b) We regard not men, except (ὁτι ὅ̓ς) they have wings; to such we will surrender this place.
   (c) On different parts of the rock the snow lay thick; but they thrust in tent-peg and so climbed up.
   (d) A talent shall be the prize for the first up.

5. (a) My name is Roxana, and I am said to be the fairest of women.
   (b) Alexander married the maiden, who was taken among those who surrendered.

6. (a) I shall now advance upon Bactria.
   (b) The tribes on this side of the Indus.
   (c) He dismissed from office all who governed in the interests of (πρὸς w. gen.) their subjects.

Book V.

1. (a) In my description I have followed Ptolemy.
(b) No one has told us whether the Indus was crossed in a bridge of boats or not.
(c) The delta of the river is called in Indian dialect Pattala.

2. (a) Let us attack him as he crosses.
(b) They broke up all the boats and carried them to the bank of the Hydaspes.
(c) He started from Taxila, intending to cross to the other side, where Porus was.

3. (a) It is noteworthy that he got his forces across just opposite the grove.
(b) The elephants will frighten the horses; we cannot attack in order of battle, but cross by stratagem.
(c) He was a long way from that part of the river where he had determined to put his troops across.
(d) He got on board as quickly as he could.
(e) About dusk there came on a heavy rain.
(f) The skins had been got ready long before.

4. (a) In range; out of range.
(b) The chariots were rendered useless; and Alexander, with his cavalry, eagerly attacked the enemy on their left flank.
(c) The elephants could not discern friend from foe.
(d) As the elephants pressed close upon them, they began to retreat backwards, their shields locked closely together.
(e) As the beasts had lost their drivers they rushed about, with a loud trumpeting noise.

5. (a) He gave the great king lands in addition to those which he had.
(b) Porus answered that he wished Alexander to treat him as a king.
(c) The Indian was wounded, but refused to begin the flight, so long as his men were engaged in battle.

6. (a) A city took its name from the horse Bucephalus, who refused all riders but Alexander himself.
(b) He started from Nicaea, after having founded it.

7. (a) The people beyond this river have an orderly constitution, and a larger number of elephants than all the Indians.
(b) They assured him that they would follow him no longer, for he undertook danger after danger.

8. (a) The army was silent, but not changed in its determination, so that the king had to turn back again.
(b) I am grieved that you are angry.
(c) If you wish to go home, go, and say that you have come back, after deserting your king.

Book VI.

1. (a) At early dawn he got on board.
(b) He sailed to the coast after libation made.
(c) The distances between horse-transports and the swift cruisers were carefully defined, and all was got ready in an orderly way.
2. (a) Now the ships of war were much damaged; for they were whirled round so as to lie across the current.  
   (b) They gave orders to row hard.  
   (c) They got the ships into deep water before they were damaged.

3. (a) He was badly hurt, but kept the enemy at bay till he fainted.  
   (b) They did not imagine that he would fall upon them outside the city.  
   (c) Fill any vessel you have with water and then march one hundred furlongs.  
   (d) He died of his wounds, and the army was left without a leader.  
   (e) They shed tears on his recovery.  
   (f) When Alexander had waved his hand the crowd shouted, for they knew that he was not dead as they supposed.

4. (a) The river at its broadest part is two miles across.  
   (b) The river rose in waves so that most of the ships were damaged.  
   (c) The ebb of the tide came and left them high and dry, and some of the ships fell foul of each other.

5. (a) Trees grew over a wide tract of country, even in the desert.  
   (b) They journeyed chiefly by night.  
   (c) The Phoenicians were put in charge of the fleet.

6. (a) The beasts of burden died of thirst.  
   (b) They had to go by the shortest routes by night.

7. (a) They brought the water which they had poured into a helmet to the king, but he poured it on the ground in sight of all.  
   (b) He marched, as he generally did, on foot.  
   (c) I should conjecture from that incident that Alexander must be praised on account of his endurance.

8. (a) Rulers may not do wrong to the ruled.  
   (b) They grudged him burial in the park.  
   (c) The charge was brought home, and all who transgressed were put to death: for they shared the same punishment with the rest.

Book VII.

1. (a) He married the daughter of Ochus.  
   (b) The eldest daughter was married to the king.

2. (a) He said that he would give to all of them a gift calculated to excite envy.  
   (b) He supposed that they would be pleased at this; but they were vexed.  
   (c) He was less agreeable than formerly.  
   (d) They wished to leave, Macedonians and their leaders and all (use the dative).

3. (a) On the following day they stood before the palace and begged to be admitted.
Exercises.

(b) I regard as friends henceforth all who now kiss me.

4. (a) Take back to Greece all that Xerxes brought here.
   (b) They promised him to do so; as I imagine, because of his victories in India.

5. (a) He got into a boat and went across: so says the diary.
   (b) He welcomed them severally.
   (c) He bathed and rested after he had supped with Medius.
   (d) Alexander died at the age of 32, after a reign of more than 12 years.

NOTES.

BOOK I.


[The references to the text are by books, chapters, and sections.]

CH. 1.—Δή 'so,' 'then,' connects the following history with the introduction, which is in this book omitted.

1. ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Π. 'Α. 'When P. was archon at Athens.' There were in point of fact nine magistrates at Athens who bore the title 'archon,' but the first of them was called 'the Archon,' or ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος, as giving his name to the year, as the consul did at Rome. The second archon went by the name ὁ βασιλεὺς, 'king'; the third, ὁ πολέμαρχος, from his originally commanding in battle; the remaining six, ἱερομάχοι, 'lawgivers.'

2. 'And (it is said) that Alexander,' etc. All the following infinitives depend on λέγεται and may be translated as indicatives.

4. ἐς Πελοπόννησον, viz., to Corinth.

5. Note the idiomatic use of the article in τὰ εἰκόσιν ἔτη.

8. Philip had recently been chosen general-in-chief of a Greek force to be despatched into Persia, in order to take vengeance for the destruction of temples and other outrages committed by the Persians in Greece.

9. ἕδωκαν, 'had given' in our idiom. ἐκαστὸς, the several states.
11. πάτριος, ‘handed down from father to son,’ ‘hereditary,’ ‘customary,’ especially of manners and customs; πατρικός, chiefly of hereditary friendships and feuds; πατριώς, of property. But the distinction between the three is not always observed.

12. ἄλλων, G. § 171. 3.

13. The subject of νεοτερίσας is τὴν πόλιν. [Demosthenes, the great Athenian orator, on hearing by a special messenger of Philip’s assassination, made strenuous efforts to rouse the Athenians to shake off the Macedonian yoke. But Alexander’s promptness overthrew all his plans.]

ἄπα (from τῷ, G. § 84) represents a cognate accusative, its noun being implied in the verb; as μεγάλα ἀμπατέαν (so ἀμαρτήματα), to commit great faults. G. § 159, note 1.

14. γε emphasizes Ἀθηναίους, bringing them into sharp contrast with the Lacedaemonians.

ἐφόδῳ, instrumental dative. [Several words for ‘way’ belong to the o-declension, but are feminine; so ὄδος, κλείνειν: ἀρπάζω, ἱσσοῦμαι; ἀμαξίζω, ὄροομαι-γοροότ.]

ἐκ-πλαγήνησα. The simple πλησσόω forms its passive aorist ἐπλήγγην, while the compounds make ἐπιλήγγην. Attic writers rarely use any part of the active πλησσόω except the perfect, using instead πατάσσω, or τύπτω.

15. καί, ‘even.’

17. εἶναι, ‘was busied;’ note the tense as contrasted with παρελθεῖν, l. 4.

CH. 2.—The spring of b.c. 335.

ἄμα is here virtually not an adverb but a preposition. Cp. the use of ἴσος, ‘together’: Thuc. 7, 84, τῷ ἄλον ἐπινέο τῷ ἴσον τῷ πνηλό, ‘the water was drunk mud and all.’

In b.c. 338 Philip decisively defeated the combined forces of Thebes and Athens. The Thebans had not only to admit a Macedonian garrison, but to send into exile all men of any mark who opposed the Macedonian interest.

2. ὡς with the participle gives the reason alleged or conceived by the actor (i.e., here Alexander), not necessarily by the narrator (Arrian himself). Thus Xen. Ἀναβ. i. 2. 19, ταύτῃ τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσα τοῖς Ἐλληνισί, ὡς πολέμιαν

οὐδεὶς, ‘this district he gave up to the Greeks to plunder because, as he said, it was hostile.’ G. § 277. 6, note.

3. φεύγω, ‘am exiled,’ is virtually the passive of διώκω. In like manner ἀπολυθῆκε is used as the passive of ἀπολέθηκεν, ἐκπήρυξεν τοῖς ἦκαλα, κεῖμαι τῇ φώσῃ. Cp. Xen. Ἀναβ. v. 1. 15, ἀπάθην ποῦ ὑπὸ Νικάνδρον, ‘he was slain by Nicander.’

4. ἐπάγομαι is the regular word for calling in foreign help. ἐπαγγελλόμενον, gen. abs.

ἐπὶ νεοτερίσας, ‘with an eye to a revolt’; Plato Protag. 312B, ἐπὶ παθέοι τὕστο ἐμαθεῖς, ‘with a view to an education didst thou learn this.’

6. τῶν ἐχόντων, partitive genitive. The Kadmeia was the citadel of Thebes, on a hill of no great height at the north-west corner of the town.

7. οἶδ᾽ν π. ὑποτετ., ‘as they suspected no hostile movement.’

The subject of ἀπάντησα is τινὲς in line 3.

9. ἀποστήματα. What tenses of ἄσπημα are transitive? G. § 123.

προϊσχομένοι, like the Latin praetendo (from which comes our word ‘pretend’), of a mere pretence.

10. ὄνομα, constantly means name and only name in opposition to reality: Plato Ῥεπ. 495C, καὶ ψωλὶ ὄνοματα καὶ προσχημάτων μεστα, ‘full of fair names and showy titles.’ ὄνομα is in apposition to ἐλευθέραν. [It is clear (both from the τῇ after ἐλευθέραν and from the very unusual construction of the plural ὄνοματα in apposition with a singular word, and this in prose) that a word or phrase has been lost.]

11. ἦδη ποτε, ‘now at length.’

ἀπαλλαγήναι, ‘be rid of,’ dependent on ἐπῆραν.

12. ἵσχυρόμενοι, ‘by stoutly asserting.’

13. καὶ γὰρ καί, ‘and what is more.’ More usual is καὶ δὴ καί: Plato Thaet. 187C, καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν τί φῆς; ‘and now what are you saying?’

15. ἀφίκτω, tense?

ὁστε, ‘so that,’ is used either with the indicative or infinitive. ‘The difference appears to be simply this: ὁστα ἀφίκων ὡς ὁστε ὁδῆ ἐβολετο’ he was so foolish that he did not wish (ex-
Notes.

pressive of the real result or consequence). ἐκτὸς ἀφρόν ἐπὶ ἔστε μὴ βούλεσθαι, he was so foolish as not to wish (expressive of the natural consequence). In Latin the distinction might be marked by translating the former, ut noluerit; the latter, ut nollet."—Shilleto. The indicative is found, e.g., I. 2. 28; 3. 7; the infinitive, I. 3. 10, and 17.

16. 'through not knowing the facts.'

18. Ἀλέξανδρος, dat. after ἐδόκει, the subject of which is τὰ τῶν Ὀθηβιαν.

19. παύεμαι, 'make to myself,' hence 'regard.'

20. Join καὶ συνεπλήσσονται. The future indicative, 'if they shall' (where in a historic clause we should rather expect 'if they should'), is more lively and dramatic than the optative would have been, regarding, as it does, the matter from Alexander's point of view.

23. νεκτερίσμοι. Verbs which signify to take hold of, touch, aim at, and the like, regularly govern a genitive; G. § 171.

24. τοῖς Ὀθηβιαῖοι. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially εἰν and σιν, take a native dependent on the preposition: συνεπελέξει Κύρος, 'he joined in war with Cyrus'; G. § 187.

29. πρὶν γενέσθαι. Πρὶν takes the infinitive chiefly after affirmative sentences, and also the indicative, subjunctive, and optative; G. § 240, 274.

γενέσθαι, sc. Ἀλέξανδρον. Ochætus, lying on the southeast shore of Lake Kopais, was within ten miles of Thebes.

CH. 3. —2. Ἰόλαος was the friend and charioteer of Herakles, who was born at Thebes.

3. τέμνων, originally any piece of land cut or marked off (τέμνω), then especially of that which was dedicated to a god. The Latin templum has a like history.

4. μετα-γόντες. The most usual force of μετὰ in composition is that of change of plan, place, etc. So μεταβάλω, 'go from one condition to another'; μεταβάλλω, 'change'; μετάνω, 'change of mind,' repentance.'

5. 'But they were so far from [lit., wanted so much of] showing any sign of yielding and coming to terms that,' etc. δῶ, δεσσα, 'I lack,' is to be carefully distinguished from δῶ, δεσσα, 'I bind.' To mark the distinction the Greeks made δῶ, 'I bind,' an exception to the rule that verbs in -ω, of two syllables admit only the contraction into ε-. Thus cp. πλέω, πλέει, πλαί, πλέμου, with δούν, δούμαι, etc.

7. ἔστε ἐπὶ, 'right up to.' In this phrase ἔστε is an adverb, corresponding to the Latin usque in usque ad.

8. ἀκροβολίσουντο. Note the tense.

10. τῶν ψιλῶν, 'some of his light-armed'; partitive genitive, usually dependent on some substantive, adjective or adverb; G. § 170. Ψιλῶν was the general name for light-armed troops of every description, slingers, archers, etc., as opposed to the heavy-armed ὀπλίται. They fought on foot and for the most part had no shield.

ἂντε ἀναστεῖλαι. See I. 2. 15 n.

12. τῷ στρατοπέδῳ αὐτῷ, 'the army itself,' i.e., the main body. For the case see G. § 187.

15. οὐδὲ τότε, 'not even then.'

17. πολύ, 'far'; acc. of extent of space. Thuc. 6. 49, Μέγαρα ἀπεκέρακεν οὐσί πλοῖων πολὺν πολὺν ὀστρ. διον, 'Megara is not far distant from Athens, either by sea or land' (lit., no long voyage or journey). H. § 710 b.

τῆς Καβνίας. G. § 174.

19. ὀς = ἄστε. H. § 1054.


21. Construe μήτε (τῶν δύνασθαι) βλάττει τι σφάς αὐτοῖς ὀπέρτε. τι here represents a cognate accusative implied in the verb βλάττει; note that a transitive verb may have a cognate accusative and another accusative at the same time. G. § 159, notes 1 and 2.

24. 'those of the Thebans who took the wisest view as to,' etc.

25. ὃρμητο, 'were urgent to ...,' pluperfect.

εἰρέσθαι, 'gain'; note the voice.

26. συγγυμνήσῃ τῆς ἀποστάσεως, 'pardon for their defection.'

27. ἐπικεκλημένοι, middle.

28. τυχεῖν δν, 'that they would obtain.' ἐν with the infinitive is often for the corresponding tense of either the
Notes.

indictive or optative with ἄν. Thus here τυχεῖν ἄν = τύχοιεν ἄν; but Thuc. 3. 89, ἀνεύ δὲ σεισμοῦ, οὐκ ἄν μοι δοκεῖ τὸ τουάρ ἐξεβρέθη γεγένησα, 'without an earthquake it seems to me that such a thing would not have happened' (οὐκ ἂν ἐπιβίω). [G. § 211; H. § 964.]

29. 'especially as some of them were.' ἔστιν οὖ, 'some,' is a stereotyped phrase, hence the singular, which is more common than the regular εἰσίν. [ἐστι [ἐστι = ἔστιν, οὐ] has the same meaning.] Attic writers use it in the oblique cases, ἔστιν οὖς, εἰς, etc., frequently; in the nominative seldom.

The Boeotarchs were representatives of the several Boeotian states, each state sending one, and Thebes as head of the league sending two. Their numbers varied with the number of the free states from seven to eleven. The elected members sat for one year, but were available for re-election; Pelopidas, the friend of Epaminondas, held the office for eleven successive years. Each Boeotarch in war commanded the contingent furnished by his state.

30. ὠς, 'thou' [note the accent which distinguishes it from ὡς, 'as'] is not used in Attic except in certain idiomatic phrases, καὶ ὡς, 'even so'; ὡς (μὴ ὡς) ὡς, 'not even so.'

CH. 4. — τῆς φυλακῆς, 'set in command of the garrison of the camp.' G. § 171, 3.


5. δι-στάσα. Other verbs which thus keep the short vowel are γελάω, χαλάω. [G. § 109. 1, note 2; H. § 503.]

10. ὡς, 'in order that.'

11. ἀπολαβοῦντες, 'by being cut off.'

πρός, 'at the hands of,' for πρό, is somewhat rare and poetic. Aesch. Eum. 411, πρός ἑρὰρ ὁμολόγος, 'seen by the gods.'

13. ἄγημα, the Doric for ἄγημα, 'that which is led,' 'a corps,' esp. in the Lacedaemonian army, here of the squadrons of cavalry, the chief of which went by the name of the ἄγημα.

16. αἰτῶ, adverb. ἔχω is idiomatically used with many adverbs instead of the corresponding adjective with εἰμι. So καλὸς ἔχω, bene se habet, and the like.

18. Ἡρακλ-εῖον. The termination -εῖον expresses the idea of 'place where.' Thus from μοῖρα comes μοισειοῦ, 'seat of the muses'; from κουρέα, 'a barber,' κουρεῖον, 'a barber's shop.' The similar ending -ιοῦ has the same force: δικαστῆρος, 'a judge,' δικαστήριον, 'court of justice.' H. § 561; G. § 129. 6.

19. ἄμα, ὁμοῦ are both adverbs used as prepositions.

20. ἔστε ἐπί. See note on ch. 3. 7.

21. ἀναχωροῦμι agrees with τοίς Θησαυροῖς. The dative follows ἐπομενα as being a word of 'association,' including verbs of approaching, meeting, etc. See H. § 772. For the irregular augment of ἐπομενα see G. § 104; H. § 359. It is really contracted from ἐπέμην, and is therefore a case of a verb beginning with a vowel taking the syllabic augment.

22. σὺν βοη, 'with a shout.' σὺν idiomatically forms several adverbial formulae, e.g., σὺν ὄργῃ, 'with anger,' 'angrily;' σὺν φόνῳ, 'from envy,' etc. In many cases the simple dative may be used at pleasure.

27. 'with his phalanx in close order.' οἱ δὲ, the men of this phalanx.

30. 'were unable to shut the gates in time.' ἐφην, for the form as if from verb in -μι, cp. ἐγνυ, ἐπλην, ἐπετην. συγκάλοισα. The participle with φθανομι is much more usual and idiomatic, e.g., Thuc. 3. 112, ἐθηκασαν τροκταλαβώντες, 'they were beforehand in taking it.' But the infinitive is also used by good writers.

30. 31. ἄλλα ... γὰρ, but (they were unable to shut them out) for, i.e., the entrance of the Macedonians was a proof that they could not be shut out. συνεισπέπτοντοι, 'are forced in with them.'

22. 'all those Macedonians who immediately followed them in their flight.' φευγόντων, genitive after εἰξοντο. cp. 2. 23 n.

ἄγε is constantly used to strengthen participles used in a causal sense: 'inasmuch as the walls also were undefended.'

34. The Plataeans had many an ill turn to avenge, having been consistently misused by Thebes on account of their alliance with Athens.

οὕτως τι, an un-Attic combination.

35. καὶ ... δὲ, 'and further,' the emphatic word being put between. οὐδὲ, 'not even.'
36. οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ, ‘indiscriminately.’
oús δὲ = τοῖς δὲ, a late Attic usage. [Only 500 Macedonians, it is said, were slain; of the Thebans 6,000 were slain and 30,000 sold as slaves.]

41. δὴ μὴ ἵππα λάβῃς, ‘except the sacred part of it.’ Adjectives denoting size or measure with a partitive gen. either agree with this gen. in gender, as δὴ here, cp. Xen. πολλὴ τῆς χώρας, Isaeus ὁ πλείστου τοῦ χρόνου: or may be neuter, as πολὺ τῆς χώρας. This agreement is rarely the case with other adjectives, but Thuc. 1. 2, τῆς γῆς ἡ ἁριστή, ‘the best of the land.’

43. Join ὅσοι Ἡρακλῆς.
καλ ... δὲ, ‘and above all.’ See note on line 35.
αἰθοί, ‘because of his reverence for P.;’ causal dative. G. § 188. Πινδάρου, objective genitive. G. § 167. 3.

CH. 5.—ἢμα with the present participle denotes that the action of the verb ἔξελευνεῖ goes on with and during the action of the participle. Xen. Anab. vi. 3. 5, ἐμάχωσεν ἢμα πορευόμενοι οἱ Ἑλληνες, ‘the Greeks fought while upon the march.’

τὰ κατὰ Μ., ‘matters in M. and among the Greeks.’
5. τῶν τρισμυράνων. The article is often used with numerals to show that merely round numbers are given. Xen. Anab. iv. 8. 22, ἢμευν ἡμέρας ἀμφί τὰς πράξεις. H. § 664. 6.

7. ἅπασα when used collectively is always feminine and singular, even with numerals, so ἅπασα ἕξεις εἰς χιλιάδι, ‘I have 1,000 horse.’ Cp. Eur. Phoen. 442, μυρίαν ἅπασας Μόγχας, ‘leading 10,000 lancers.’ Xen. Anab. i. 7. 10, τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἅπασα μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, ‘of the Greeks 10,400 hoplites.’

10. πελών, ‘more usual,’ ‘generally accepted.’ Ἀλέξανδρον and all the following accusatives and infinitives dependant on ἀπὸ πελών Μόγχας κατέχει.

12. δια-βάλλειν has here its literal sense, ‘put across;’ but its more common meaning is ‘to slander.’

μέσον τὸν πόρον, ‘the middle of the passage.’ Adjectives of place, μέσος, ἄκρος, ἔσχατος, when used together with the article and referring only to a part of the subject, stand in the order, μέσος ὁ πόρος or ὁ πόρος μέσος. τὸν μέσον πόρον would mean, ‘the passage which is between two others.’

15. αὐτόν, ‘ipsum,’ emphatic according to the rule; for αὐτῶν represents αὑτῶν of direct narration.

17. ‘at the place where (lit. whence) he started from Europe and at the place of his disembarkation in Asia.’ Ἀσίας, partitive genitive.

Διὼς, Ἀθηρίας, Ἡρακλῆν, τις ἔργον. In the declension of proper names ending in -κλῆς it must be remembered that the full form is Ἡρακλῆς, which accounts for voc. κλῆς, etc.

19. ἀν-αδόντα, i.e., up from the shore inland; the land was also hilly. So ἀνόρθωσε = ‘march inland.’ In like manner, because when you are standing on the shore the sea appears to rise, ἀνάγειν = ‘to put out to sea,’ as opposed to κατάγειν, ‘put into land.’ The opposite of ἀνόρθωσις is κατάρασις.

22. ‘from the time of the Trojan war.’ ταύτα τὰ δῆλα, acc. after ἐθρεφον.

24. Ζεὺς ἐρείκος, i.e., of the ἔρεος (the front enclosure or court of the Greek house), so called because his statue stood there.

25. ‘Deprecating Priam’s wrath against the family of Neoptolemus, which in fact (ὁδῷ) extended to (i.e., included) him (Alexander).’ Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus), son of Achilles, had, after the taking of Troy, butchered Priam, king of Troy, and his son Polites at the altar of Zeus Herkæos. Alexander traced back his descent to Achilles on the mother’s side, to Herakles on the side of his father.

CH. 6.—3. Σκληρόν, ‘in double line,’ φάλαγγα. See note on Macedonian army at end of the notes.

6. Parmenio had been a successful general for some years, and had been greatly trusted by Philip.

8. Join ἐπὶ τῷ δίχθῳ.

9. ὡς ἔχουμεν, ‘just as we are,’ ‘in our present condition.’

10. πολύ, ‘far.’ λεπτομέρειν, ‘since they are inferior,’ causal participle. G. § 277. 2.

11. αὐλισθήματι, prolative infinitive after τοιούτων.

14. δοκοῦμεν had better be translated by the English impersonal, ‘it seems to me that we,’ etc. Greek prefers to be
personal. Thus, Κύρος λέγεται νικήσαι, ‘Cyrus is said to have conquered,’ is better Greek, as a rule, than λέγεται Κύρον νικήσαι.

16. ὃραται, ‘are clearly seen to be,’ ‘are evidently’; supply δοντα, which would not be omitted in good Attic. ‘And you see that some parts of these banks.’


18. ἀτάκτως and κατὰ κέρας qualify ἐκβαίνουσιν, which is dat. pl. after ἐπικείσονται. G. § 187.

κατὰ κέρας, also ἐπὶ κέρας, Lat. longo aegmine, opposed to ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.

ὑπερ ἀσθενεστάτων, ‘where it is weakest,’ supply κέρας.

20. ‘Our first failure is both dangerous as regards the present, and regards the decision of the whole campaign it is hazardous.’

24. σμικρὸν ῥέμα, ‘a paltry stream,’ in apposition to τοῦτο. σμικρὸς is the Ionic form of the Attic μικρός.

οὖν ... ἐκφανίσωσα, ‘thus disparaging the G. by this name,’ by calling it a mere brook. These words are a parenthetical insertion of Arrian.

25. The distinction is usually made between ἐφρυ, ‘shut out,’ and ἐφρυο, ‘shut in.’

μὴ οὐ. Verbs of preventing, denying, and others which contain a negative notion are followed by the infinitive with μὴ, Eur. Ion, 391: καλούσεσθα μὴ μαθεῖν, ‘we are prevented from learning.’ But if a negative precede this verb of hindering, etc., μὴ οὐ is substituted for μὴ. So ‘we are not prevented from learning’ is οὐ καλοῦσεσθα μὴ οὐ μαθεῖν. In the same way μὴ οὐ is used after one of these verbs when it stands in a question which implies a negative. Plato Gorgias 461c, τίνα. οἱ ἄφρασιν εσθαι (= οὐδεὶς ἀπαρνήσεται) μὴ οὐχ ἔπιθασθαί τὰ δίκαια, ‘no one will deny that he knows the nature of justice.’ In this passage the negative is merely implied in the αἰσχύνομαι, as in Plato Protag. 352d, αἰσχρὸν ἐστὶ σοφῶν μὴ οὐχί πάντων κράτιστον φάναι, ‘it was a shame (i.e., I may not refuse) to say that wisdom is the best of all things.’ In strict Attic Greek, when the genitive τοῦ precedes the inf., only μὴ (not μὴ οὐ) is used.

15. γιγνοσθαί, ‘prove themselves to be.’

καὶ μὴ καί, ‘and besides,’ ‘and in particular.’

16. Construe προεμβάλλει Αμινταν ἐχος τοῦ Πάινας καὶ μίαν τάξιν τῶν πεζῶν, and just below, προεμβάλλει Πτολεμαίων ἀγοντα τῆς Σ. ληβ. βέλλω and its compounds are in Attic never used transitively in this sense.

22. ‘Always extending his line en echelons, where the stream diverted’ (his line of march).

24, 25. Note the subjunctive προσ-μὴ after the optative προσ-πίπτονεν. The true rule is that after historical tenses the optative is preferred but not required, the subjunctive being freely used. H. § 881 a. G. § 216. 2.
Notes.

28. τὸ πλήθει ἐλαττοῦμενον, ‘as they were so much smaller in number.’ The dative of manner is used to show in what particular point or respect something is true. H. § 780.
31. ἡμι, not good Attic.
33. ἢνα, ‘where.’
36. τοῖς Μακεδονίσι, ‘of the Macedonians.’
37. In Greek ‘to fight on horseback’ is μάχεσθαι ἅρ ιπποῦ. G. § 191. 2.
39. οἱ μὲν, the Macedonians.
ἔφθασα ταῖς βιβαζορηθαί, ἀρξαί. These infinitives express purpose, G. § 206.
41. οἱ Πίεραι explains οἱ δέ, as οἱ Μακεδονεῖς explains οἱ μὲν.
43. ‘Not only owing to their strength and skill, but because...’
κρανεῖνοι: Virg. Georg. 2. 447, bona bello cornus, ‘the cornel serviceable in war.’
47. καλ ὅσ, ‘and he’: cp. the Platonic phrase, ἥ δ' ὅσ, ‘said he.’
49. ‘Leading on with him a wedge so to say of the horse,’ i.e., a body of horse in the formation known as ‘the wedge,’ Lat. cuneus.
57. άνετέρατο, ‘had raised,’ middle.
58. ἑπορφάσασ: cp. the use of φθάνω. ὁ Δροπίδου, H. § 730 a.
60. ἴον, ‘and the axe with it.’ ἐν τούτῳ, ‘meanwhile.’ ἀδί, ‘from time to time.’
63. καί, as well as his own Macedonians.
67. δέ is often inserted to mark the apodosis of the sentence, when the first clause is conditional or relative.
68. ἐργάζεσθαι, see line 39 n., ‘because Hellenes as they were, contrary to the universal Hellenic decision, they fought,’ etc. ὑπὲρτε, concessive, G. § 277. 3.
71. εἰναι, purpose is expressed.
72. ἐν τοῖς, ‘in the citadel.’ Thuc. 2. 15, καλεῖται ἡ ἀκρόπολις ἵπτ' Ἀθηναίων τόπος. In this sense πόλις is usually without the article.

73. πλὴν Λακεδαιμονίων. Agis II., King of Sparta (b.c. 338-330), was Alexander's bitter foe, and was doing his best to rouse all Greece against him, while his brother Agesilas was trying in Crete to bring about a junction with the Persian fleet. Agis was afterwards defeated and slain by the Macedonians under Antipater, b.c. 330.

CH. 8.—3. κατὰ κράτος, ‘by assault.’
6. δῆσα...πόλεις, ‘all the cities which lay between.’
9. ὡς, ‘as if for,’ i.e., in expectation of.
12. ὡς, ‘as regarded security.’
13. η κατω Ἀσία, ‘lower (i.e., on the coast) Asia.’
16. ὄρμω (and its compounds), derived from ὄρμος, ‘an anchorage,’ and meaning ‘to lie at anchor,’ must be carefully distinguished from ὄρμα, ‘start,’ connected with ὄρμη, ‘impulse.’
17. ὡς, see ch. 3. 19 n.
20. γνώντες, ‘having come to the conclusion.’ Remember that γνωρίσκω is an inceptive verb.
21. τοῦ τείχους, partitive after το μὲν.
καταπεπτυκός, ‘that...had fallen down,’ the participle as usually in Greek following verbs of perceiving, finding, or representing. G. § 279. 2.
24. ὑπὸ sometimes expresses the cause, as Thuc. 2. 85, ἐπὶ ἄπλως ἔνδρευτον, ‘he delayed because of bad weather,’ but much more commonly the agent; H. § 808. c. τοῦ τετράδεθαι: the infinitive with the article may stand as a substantive in any case; H. § 959; G. § 262.
25. ἀμφα δευτέραν φυλακήν, about midnight, as we see from line 33.
26. ἀντιφοιδώμενον, ‘had...’ in our idiom, cp. i. 1. 9 n.
28. πλησιον, adverb used as preposition.
τῶν δέ, G. § 171.
30. ὑπενεχεύσα, from ἑπιφέρω.
34. καλ ὡς: cp. 3. 30 n.
35. ‘Those who were still found firing the city.’
36. τούτοις δέ, the δέ merely marks the apodosis.
40. πολιορκεῖν. G. § 263. 'He declined to lay siege to them, perceiving that he would meet with considerable delay in investing them owing to the natural strength of the places, and that it was of no importance to him, as he had already taken the city generally.'

44. τοὺς ... τεταγμένους, i.e., the engineers.

BOOK II.

CH. 1.—5. πολές, 'prevailed widely'; this meaning it gets from its place in the sentence. Γόρδιον and all the following accusatives and infinitives depend on λόγος κατέχε. 7. ἄνω, 'by name,' G. § 160.1.

8. εἴ τούτῳ, 'at this juncture.'

9. γίνεσθαι αὐτοῖς, 'was given them.' ἀξεῖ, note the tense.

11. ὅμων = preposition, i. 2. 1. n, ἐπι-στήμα, aorist of ἐπι-στήμα.

αὐτή ἀμάξι, 'waggon and all,' accessory dative.

14. ὅντα, 'recognized that he was.'

15. αὐτοῖς is the subject of the transitive καταστήσατε.

17. χαριστήρια, 'as a thank-offering,' apposition. πρός, 'in addition to.'

19. χρήμα, 'it was destined.' τούτον, antecedent to ὅπῃς.

ἀξέι, should 'go with the empire of,' aorist.

21. ἀπάρως ἐῖχε: cp. i. 4. 16 n.

22. 'Was unwilling to leave it untied lest this again should cause some commotion among the crowd.'

25. λελύθαι ἐφή, 'claimed to have untied it,' middle.

28. ἀμφι τὸ δεσμῷ would be in Attic Greek περὶ τῶν δεσμῶν.

29. 'I cannot say for certain how...' Ἀλέξανδρῳ, dative of agent. ὅπον, 'any way.'

31. καὶ γὰρ καί: cp. 2. 13 n.

CH. 2.—1. ὑπὸ καμάτου, i. 8. 24 n.

2. οἱ δὲ, 'other authorities.' ὑπέτειν, usually transitive, here intransitive.

ἐπιθυμήσαντα, 'through longing for the....' For genitive cp. G. § 171. 2.

ἰδρῶν and πρὶγῡω contract into ω as well as ω. So the nom. fem. pl. of the present part. is ἱδρώσαι and the present inf. πρίγῡων, G. § 98, note 3.


οὖν, 'then,' resuming after the parenthesis.

ἵστεσα and the following infinitives depend on 'they say.'

8. 'Thought he could not live'; ἔσται, neuter impersonal.

10. πιστευόμενον, 'trusted.' τὰ ἄλλα, G. § 142. 2. note 3.

11. καθήματα, from καθαίρω. No iota subscript is needed, as the verb-stem is καθαρ- lengthened in the present to καθαρ.

12. τόν, 'that he,' = demonstrative pronoun. In the nominative we find καὶ ὅς, 'and he'; cp. ἡ δ' ὅς, 'said he,' καὶ τόν, καὶ τῇ are thus used before an infinitive. Cp. also the phrase τὸ καὶ τὸ: Demosth. ἐδει γὰρ τὸ καὶ τὸ πονήσατε, καὶ τὸ μὴ πονήσατε, 'this and that we ought to have done, and this not to have done.' H. § 655.

14. '(Bidding him) beware of Philip.' διέφθαρμαί, from διά-φθείρα.

15. ὅστε, 'on condition that.' Thuc. iv. 46, ἐνέβην γὰρ τοὺς ἑπτὰ περὶ τὸν δεσμῷ παραδοῦναι, 'came to terms on the condition of surrendering their auxiliaries.' The more usual way of expressing this was by ἐφ' ὑπε, also with the infinitive. H. § 953. 6.

16. μετὰ χεῖρας ἔστησα, 'with it still in his hands,' properly 'taking it between his hands and holding it there.' H. § 801.

18. δοσάναι, '(Alexander) gave it.' ἀναγνώσαν, 'for him to read it.' See 1. 7. 39 n.
20. 'Philip was at once proved to be acting honestly in the matter of the drug.' τὰ is subject to καλὸς ἔχει: cp. I. 4.
16 n.

23. 'In all other respects also to obey him as (lit. 'as many as') he might demand [an unusual sense of ἐπαγγέλλω, but Demoeth. de Pales Leg. §§ 46, 213 uses it = 'ask a favour'] : for he said that he would recover by following his advice.'

26. καὶ ... δὲ: see I. 4. 35 n.

27. 'Towards his friends personally he is (τυχόντι εἶναι ὕπο) quite to be depended on for not being suspicious.'

CH. 3.—4. τῆς 'Α. γῆς, partitive. ἀνάπεπταμα, from ἀναπεπτάναμαι. 5. τὸ πλῆθει, i.e., his advantage in point of numbers. ἐνυπάσσασθαί. An inf. often follows adjectives which denote fitness or any like idea: so Plato has χαλεπὰ εἰρέω, 'hard to find'; tr. 'for his horse to manoeuvre in.'

6. χωρίον, acc. after ἀπολείπειν. 8. 'For (he said) that ....'

πρὸς, 'on the side of,' i.e., favourable to. σκιεῖς: there were in the Persian army many more light-armed troops than in the Macedonian.

11. ἐνι, 'on,' i.e., 'in consequence of.' 12. 'This (the delay) made Dareius swerve from (i.e. change) his plan: and whatever presented itself to him as the most pleasant course, into this he was voluntarily seduced.'

14. 'And puffed up by those who associate and will associate with the king for the time being to his hurt.'

15. ἔγνω, 'he decided.'

τοῦ πρόσω, 'any farther,' partitive. 18. ἀλλαξ ἀλλοθεν, i.e., from every side.

20. ἄντε: see I. 8. 21 n. αὐτοῦ, 'where he was,' H. § 760 a.

22. ἀκούσατι, Lat. audītum, G. § 261. 2. ὑπειθεῖ, 'prevailed, lit. 'persuaded him'; τὰ χείρω in L. 21 is nominative.

'And it was even a divine impulse come upon him which ....'

24. αὐτοῦ, 'mere number,' apart from all other considerations, so αὐτὴν in 26.

31. στρατηγοῦν ... ἀλαρχαῖ: the article is omitted, because they are not spoken of as individuals, but merely as the bearers of these titles; whereas τοὺς ἄγμοναν does refer to particular officers.

33. τοῦ κυρίονου, 'for the danger run.' ὅτι, 'that.'

CH. 4.—5. ἄρετήν, 'brave deed.' 6. γνωριμώτεροι, 'at all distinguished.' 8. ἐν ἀπόστεια, 'in the distance.'

9. 'Slowly in order to prevent any part of the phalanx projecting by his march being too rapid (lit. 'too vehement') and so being broken.' κυμήνας, aor. part. of κυμαύω.

12. ἐν τοῦ δεσποτῆ, sc. κέρας. δρόμω, 'at the double,' opposed to βάδην of line 9.

13. ὅς ἐκπλήσσαι, 'in order to strike with panic,' not an Attic construction.

τοῦ ἁλάμ βαλλόντεια, '(in order) to avoid being much injured.' The infinitive with τοῦ is often used without a preposition to denote the purpose, especially a negative purpose. H. § 960.

16. ἐν χειρίν, consequent. 19. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες. The verb is ἐμβάλλονται in line 27, and the sentence being so long the subject is there repeated.

20. 'Where the phalanx of the Macedonians offered an opening, having had its formation broken on the right wing, because (while μὲν) A. had eagerly dashed into the river, and had begun to fight at close quarters, and was already dislodging those Persians who were posted there), the Macedonians in the centre had not set to the work with the like eagerness, and in many places finding the river banks precipitous were unable to keep the front of the phalanx in the same line, at this point, I say, the Greeks,' etc.

παραρραγέσθαι, from παραρρήγησθαι. ξέθει, impf., the more usual form being ξέ-θει, lit. 'persuaded him,' G. § 104. τοῦ ἔργου, G. § 171. Note the position of the word κρημικάδες. ταύτη, antecedent to γ in line 20, which is repeated in 23.

29. τῶν μέν, the Greeks who were fighting for Dareius.
30. ἀπώσασθαι, final, 'fighting in order to...and to recover the victory for those of their number (i.e., of the Persians) who were already in flight.'
32. 'Not to fall short of A.'s success which was now apparent.' εὐπραγίας: verbs of superiority and inferiority take the genitive because of the comparative idea which they contain: Thuc. 6. 72, ἀνὴρ ξίνεσιν οὐδὲνος λειπόμενος, 'a man second to none in understanding.' H. § 749.
35. φιλοτμίας, partitive gen., dependent on τὰ.
38. οἷκ ἡμελημένοιν, non ἰγνοβιλίον.
40. 'Seeing that those of the P. who faced them were routed,' I. 8. 21 n. ὅρκαντες agrees with the sense of τάξεως.
41. τὸ πονοῦμένων σφόν, 'their own troops who were in difficulties.'
42. ἀπώσαντο = ἀπεώσαντο of Attic.
45. παρ' ἑρωμα, strong perfect of παραρρήγμα.
49. Note the double construction of πρίν; cp. I. 2. 36 n., and H. § 924.
λαμπρά, 'signal,' 'decided.'

CH. 5.—1. ὡς εἶχεν, 'just as he was'; cp. I. 6. 9. ἦστε, 'as long as.'
5. ἐν-ἐκφέρε, from ἐγκπρέφω, one of a number of verbs which form their presents by inserting an ε, which is dropped in most of the tenses, so δοκεῖ, ἔδοξε, ἔδεω, ἔδοξε, γαμέω, ἕγμα. H. § 509.
6. καί...καί, 'both...and.'
κάνδυς, the national Median garment, of wool or, in the case of kings and nobles, of silk: usually purple or scarlet with white. It was a kind of cape with wide sleeves which came down to the ends of the fingers.
8. οὐ διὰ μακροῦ, 'not long after'; διὰ with genitive of time usually means 'at an interval of,' hence 'after'; cp. the somewhat similar phrase (Thuc. 3. 21), διὰ δέκα ἐπάλξεων περίγον ἦσαν, 'every ten battalions there were towers.'
ἀφελέστο is followed by a double acc., G. § 164.

Notes.

10. For the usage of καίτερ see H. § 979. τῶν μηρῶν, G. § 169. 1.
11. ὡ δὲ, ὡ δὲ introduces the apodosis.
15. Before ὅρους (which is dative of the agent, G. § 188. 3) supply an antecedent such as τοῖτοι.
16. ἐργασμένωι, I. 8. 21 n.
17. ὅς brings out the distributive force of ἐκάστους. The full construction is καὶ ἐτίμησεν κ. ἔπιστας, ὡς ἐκατῶν ἐτίμησεν.
18. οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ, 'not even...nor yet;' these words never answer each other in the meaning 'neither...nor.' H. § 1043. a.

Notes.

10. For the usage of καίτερ see H. § 979. τῶν μηρῶν, G. § 169. 1.
11. ὡ δὲ, ὡ δὲ introduces the apodosis.
15. Before ὅρους (which is dative of the agent, G. § 188. 3) supply an antecedent such as τοῖτοι.
16. ἐργασμένωι, I. 8. 21 n.
17. ὅς brings out the distributive force of ἐκάστους. The full construction is καὶ ἐτίμησεν κ. ἔπιστας, ὡς ἐκατῶν ἐτίμησεν.
18. οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ, 'not even...nor yet;' these words never answer each other in the meaning 'neither...nor.' H. § 1043. a.

CH. 6.—4. ὡτε...τε, 'I see that not...and.'
5. ἀσφαλῇ, supply ὄσσα, which would in good Attic not be omitted; cp. I. 6. 16 n.
6. 'To pursue Dareius, leaving behind us the city of the T. still doubtful (which side to take), etc. διάκειν (sc. ἡμᾶς) is acc. and inf. after the following ἀσφαλές.
8. ἐκομισάς, 'held,' 'occupied,' passive. [What would it mean if it were middle? H. § 738.] For the rules as to gender where there are two or more substantives, see H. § 615.
10. ἄρα, 'perchance.'
11. τῶν χωρίων, G. § 171. 3.
Notes.

προχωρησάντων ἡμῶν, G. § 183.

13. μετ-αγάγοιν. The optative is quite irregular, the whole of A.'s speech being in present time. G. § 215 f. For the force of μετ-, see I. 3. 4 n.

14. ἐκ τού εὐθέως, 'at the present moment.' For the fact, see I. 7. 74 n.

17. ἐξαρθεῖσθαι, i.e., by us.

'Which is the greatest and strongest part of the Persian fleet, viz., that of .

21. ὥστε, namely that in a vision he thought (lit., seemed to himself) that he was.'

24. Aristander of Telmessus, one of Alexander's prophets, who had been held in repute by A.'s father Philip.

25. ὡς ἀλωσομένην. With ὡς is sometimes found an acc. (instead of a gen.) absolute.

26. καὶ γὰρ καλ, 'for in fact.'

27. αὐτῶις, the Tyrians, to be got from τῆς Τέρου.

28. τὰ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, 'naval matters.'

29. πρὸς, 'in favour of,' 'favourable to.' ἐν τῷ τότε, 'at that time.'

αὐτῶις τοῖς Τύριοις, G. § 184. 4.

CH. 7.—συνελήγη, 'had been collected' in our idiom.

9. ἐσ τετρακόσιοιν, 'as many as 400 (were slain).'</n

CH. 8.—2. πρέσβεις. What is used as the singular? [This was Dareius' second embassy to Alexander.] ὡς, preposition.

3. ὑπέρ, 'as ransom for.'

5. τὴν χάραν, i.e., Upper Syria and the whole of Asia Minor.

7. ἐναλ, dependent on δοῦναι.

Dareius' daughter was, like her mother, named Statira, and married Alexander. She is called sometimes Barsine. See vii. 1. 3.

10. 'That if he were Alexander he would have been content...'

11. ἐπὶ τούτοις, 'on these conditions,' to be taken with καταλθόρα.

12. πρόσω κυνδυνεύειν, 'to run further risk.'

14. 'but that, since he is A., he is giving (= intends to give) D. the answer which in point of fact he gave.'

15. χρημάτων, after δεόνται.

16. λαβεῖν, 'took' = 'would take.'

19. καὶ οὐ διδόντος Δαρείον, 'even if D. refused her,' οὐ coalescing with διδόντος so as to form one verb, and therefore used although the sentence is conditional. So Plato Apology 25b, ἐὰν οὐ φήτε, 'if you deny it,' where οὖν μὴ φήτε would mean 'unless you assert it,' H. § 1028. [Here καὶ μὴ διδόντος would mean 'if D. did not give her.]

20. εἰρήσου, in translating bring out the force of the middle.

11. ἐπὶ τούτοις, 'on these conditions,' to be taken with καταλθόρα.

12. πρόσω κυνδυνεύειν, 'to run further risk.'

14. 'but that, since he is A., he is giving (= intends to give) D. the answer which in point of fact he gave.'

15. χρημάτων, after δεόνται.

16. λαβεῖν, 'took' = 'would take.'

19. καὶ οὐ διδόντος Δαρείον, 'even if D. refused her,' οὐ coalescing with διδόντος so as to form one verb, and therefore used although the sentence is conditional. So Plato Apology 25b, ἐὰν οὐ φήτε, 'if you deny it,' where οὖν μὴ φήτε would mean 'unless you assert it,' H. § 1028. [Here καὶ μὴ διδόντος would mean 'if D. did not give her.]

20. εἰρήσου, in translating bring out the force of the middle.

CH. 9.—'Decided to make his way towards.'

2. Παλαιστίνη originally meant only the country of the Philistines in the south-west, but afterwards came to denote the whole district between Lebanon and the Sinaic Peninsula. Here it is an adjective. καλομένης, 'as it is called.'

6. ἐπάγομαι, see I. 2. 4 n.

7. τῷ χαρῷ, G. § 184. 2. He felt sure that from its natural strength it would never be taken by storm. ἀλώναι ἄν, 'that it would be taken,' H. § 964.

8. δέχομαι, like the Latin recipio [Caes. de Bell. Gall. 2. 3, oppidio (abl.) recipere, 'to receive them in their towns'] takes the instrumental case.

10. βαλεία, 'steep.' Note ἄν-οδος.

17. Join ἄμφιοιν κάτωθιν.

19. παντροῦ. The verbal in -τος is often merely equivalent to a past participle; cp. the Latin ama-tus.

21. ὅπα, 'where.'

22. μὴ οὖν. An infinitive after a verb of hindering (ἐπὶ) regularly takes μὴ, and not μὴ οὖν, unless the verb of 'hindering' is preceded by a negative; see note on I. 6. 25.

27. ἔρημο. What other verbs contract in this way? G. § 98, note 2; H. § 412.
BOOK III.

CH. 1.—3. παρ-έπλευν (ἐπλευ, ἐπλευ), i.e., along the shore.

6. Κανώρα (or Kanobus) lay about 12 miles N.E. of Alexandria, until the foundation of which it was the chief emporium of lower Egypt.

7. Μαρία, the form Μαριώτις is more common, now lake Mariut. It got its name from a town Μαρία on its banks.

9. ἔδωκαν ὁ χώρος ... τὸν πόλιν, ‘the site seemed to him ... and it seemed.’ Note that δικέω, which can be used personally and impersonally, here combines both constructions.

10. γενέσθαι ἓν, ‘that it would become’; H. § 964.

11. τόθος, ‘eagerness’; in classical Greek means rather ‘desire’ in the sense of yearning for something absent or lost.

12. σημεία, ‘limits’; see Demosth. 932. 15, ἐξω τῶν σημείων τοῦ ἔμπειρον ἔμποροι.

Δέμομαι is not used in good Attic prose. ‘And he settled where they were to build the market place in it, and how many sacrifices (to offer), and in honour of what gods ..., and where (sc. ἐδεῖ) to throw the wall round.’

15. ἐπὶ τοῦτοις, ‘with this end in view,’ viz., to win the goodwill of these gods.

ἔφανερο, ‘were found to be favourable.’

CH. 2.—3. ἐπὶ τοῦτοις, ‘hereupon.’

‘Ἀμμοῦν, the Egyptian Keph, identified by the Greeks with Zeus, was worshipped under the form of a man with a ram’s head. His oracle was in the oasis of Siwah in the Libyan desert, about 220 miles from Alexandria, where ruins of the temple still exist.

2. χρυσόμομον, ‘in order to consult’: distinguish χρὰω and χράομαι.

4. Parastetion, or Ammonia, in later times the refuge of Antony and Cleopatra after the battle of Actium.

στάδιον, from στάδιον, H. § 214.

8. ἐράπετο, strong aor. of τρέπω.

9. Alexander’s visit was in the winter, at which time copious rains fall.
88 Notes.

CH. 4.—2. ἀνω ὀρμάτω, 'struck inland.'

Thapsacus, the Tiphah of the Old Testament. At the fords here was the regular passage to Babylon.

3. Ἑκατόμβαον, the month in which the hecatombs, ἐκατόμβα, great public sacrifices, were offered. It was the first in the Attic year, and corresponded to the second half of July and the first half of August.

5. καλ γάρ καὶ: see I. 2. 13 n.
6. ἔκ, 'by,' of the agent.
    ἐπ-ἐπιτραπτό, pluperf. of ἐπι-τρέπομαι.
9. ἐπι τώδε, 'because of this.' ἤνπ-ἐχής, 'continuous,' i.e., right across.
10. τοῖς Μακεδόνις, dat. of the agent.
11. ἐπι-θοῦντο, from ἐπι-τιθήμαι.
18. ἀλάντες, from ἀλλάζωμαι.
19. 'The men from D.'s army, who had been sent in different directions to reconnoitre.'
21. ἐπὶ, 'on the banks of.' ἐγνωκώς, 'having decided.'
23. 'Than (that) with which he fought' at Issus.
27. The Tigris (i.e., 'an arrow') gets its name from its velocity.

CH. 5.—1. ἄρος, so. στρατάριον.
4. 'The whole force of D. was said to amount to....'
8. ἐπὶ τάδε, 'this side.'
10. τῆς πόλεως, in apposition with 'Ἀρβέλων.'
11. ἐν χώρῳ ὁμαλῶ: the plain naturally level had been further levelled artificially.
12. 'By all the scouts of the P. who were taken prisoner'; see 4. 19.
13. 'Stayed where the news was brought to him.'
14. ἐκ, 'after'; cp. the phrase common in Caesar, ex igitur.
17, 18. ὅπι μή, 'except': cp. the use of ὅποι μή.
φέρουσιν, participle.
19. ὅσ, 'in order to.'

21. 'When it was announced to him that A. was...,' lit. 'when A. was announced to him...,' the Greek, as usual, preferring the personal to the impersonal construction.
24. 'For all that they could not as yet see one another.'
27. κατά, 'down from.'

ἐστινε, 'halted' [which tenses of ἐστιν are transitive? H. § 500. Just so, ἔφθασα, 'produced'; ἔστη, 'was born'; πέφυκα, 'am by nature'; ἔνυσα, submerged; ἔδω, dived, set (of the sun)].

CH. 6.—3. ἀν, partitive.

5. τῆς φάλαγγος, partitive gen. after πρὸς, 'in the van of the phalanx of the M., next the cavalry, was posted' (pluperf.).
6. τῶν ἐπιπέδων, after ἐξόμενον, G. § 171; so ἐχώμενοι in lines 11 and 13.
7. ἐπὶ, 'upon,' 'next to,' i.e., 'behind.'
13. ὡς ἐπὶ, 'right up to.'
15. Φιλάτα, Doric genitive of -τα (Attic -της): H. § 146 d.
18. κεκόσμητο: notice this omission of the augment in a historic tense which is frequent in Arrian, but is not found in good Attic.
20. τῶν ἐπιτεταγμένων, 'of the rear rank'; ἐπὶ has the sense which it has in line 7; and cp. the usages τῆς ἐπιτεταγμένης ἡμέρα, 'the next day'; τῶν ἐπιτεταγμένων θέρους, 'the following summer.' Cp. τούς προτεταγμένους in c. 7. 4.
22. δέχομαι, 'receive,' i.e., sustain the attack of.

ἡμέρες would be in Attic ἡμέρες.
28. 'The Veteran Mercenaries as they are called.'
36. ἔτεκαμεν is an Ionic form of -ταταμένοι ἰδαν, just as ἔτεκαμεν is found for τεταγμένοι εἴσο. Before -αται, -ατο the letters π, β, κ, γ are aspirated. The verb-stem of τάσω is ταγ-.
38. ἐπὶ δέ, 'and next.'
39. Τυρίμμα, Doric gen., as Φιλάτα, line 15.
ταύτη, 'in this part.'
42. στρατιά, sc. ἃν. ἀμφί τὰς, the article to denote that the numbers are round, I. 5. 5 n.

CH. 7.—The Persian centre stood opposite Alexander's right wing, so that their left wing reached far beyond his line and threatened to outflank it.
5. 'To prevent their...'
7. τοὺς ἐπέλασ, acc. after κέλευεν.
11. μᾶλλον, 'altogether,'
14. τὰ μὲν...τὰ δὲ, line 15, 'both...and'; note the use of the plural.
15. κατ-ηκόντισαν, sc. τοὺς ἰπποὺς.
16. κατ-ἐσπα, impf. of κατασπάον.
17. δι-ἐπέσε: in translating bring out the force of both prepositions. διέσχον (aor.), 'opened out.'
19. σῶν: for the declension of σῶς see H. § 227. οἶς ἑπιλαβή, 'the charioteers.'
20. τόιτων, after ἐκράτησαν.
[In the battle of Kunaxa the scythe-bearing chariots did no harm, Xen. Anab. I. 8. 10 f.]
22. Aretas (6. 30) was in the second line.
25. ἐπὶ κέρωσ, 'en echelons.' Alexander's movement was a side movement somewhat to the right, so that the left wing of his own division would be thrown forward.
26 f. 'But when the cavalry who had gone to help those who were being surrounded on the right flank had made something of a breach in the front lines of the Persian phalanx, then he wheeled (i.e., to the left), etc.

περικυκλο, from φράσσω. So Livy talks of horrendae hastae.
ἐμ βεβλήκε, augment omitted as ch. 6. 18.
38. At Issus Dareins had fled σὺν τοῖς πρῶτοι, see II. 5. 1; here actually first. On both occasions his cowardice contributed largely to the defeat of the Persians.
39. 'Those of the P. who...'
42. ἐφόνευον, tense?

CH. 8.—1. ἐκ, 'after,' as at c. 5. 14.
λαμπάδα, 'torch-race.'
5. 'But the Mountaineers as they are called.'
6. ἀπέθανον ἐπό, 'were slain by.'
8. Note that πύλας being feminine has an adjective of feminine form, Περσίδας, agreeing with it.
13. ὡς, 'in order to.'

CH. 9.—2. τῷ τείχῳ, G. § 186.
3. πληγάς, vulnera.
7. ὡς ἐστε.
9. ἐρ, 'in command of.'
12. αὐτόν, i.e., Alexander.
14. τὰς σάλπιγγας, subject to σημανεῖν.
8 merely marks the apodosis.
17. τῷ μὲν...ἄλλῃ δὲ. The latter instead of τῷ δὲ.
19. φοβερα γενομένη, 'when this became panic.'
ῥήσοντες, intransitive; so we say 'to tear along,' tear being usually transitive.
23. The elder Cyrus was the founder of the Persian Empire. In B.C. 559 he led the Persians against the Median King Astyages, whom he conquered and dethroned. He also subdued Croesus King of Lydia and the rest of Asia Minor; he took Babylon, but was killed in battle by the Massagetae, a Scythian tribe, B.C. 529.

27. τὸς μὲν δὴ: the subject of the sentence is Dareins.

31. ξύν-εὐλεκτο, pluperfect, 'which had been masted by him.'

CH. 10.—3. ἐνέλη, 'without deduction.'

4. παρ' αὐτοῖ, ultr. ἐπι-, 'into the bargain.' 2000 talents, nominally about £450,000.

5. ὄτις βούλειτο, G. § 233.

12. ἐπιτο, also qualified by πολλοί.

καὶ ὡς, 'even so,' in spite of his losses.


15. ὡς, i.e., at the rate at which.

17. ἀπ' αγγελόν, qui nuntiet.

18. ξυνελήφοτες εἶν, 'had taken,' optative, because an indirect statement; G. § 242. The subjunctive and optative perfect are usually formed by periphrastic forms made up of the participle with ὡ and εἰρη respectively. This is nearly always the case in the active, always in the passive. The forms λελύκα, λελύκαμυ for instance are very rare. G. § 118.

20. διωκτά, 'that he must pursue.' In this impersonal use of the verbal the plural is often used: πολεμητέα ἦν, 'it was necessary to war.' H. § 635.

23. τῆς νυκτός, 'in the night.' We should have rather expected the acc. τῆς νύκτα, 'all the night long.'

26. όπο τῆς ἑω, sub lucem. The article is often idiomatically omitted, ὥφ ἑω, H. § 661. For the declension of ἑως see H. §§ 159, 161.

27. ὄμημαν, used intransitively.

28. οὐδέ, 'not even.'

29. 'And those who had turned (aor. pass.) to defend them-

selves, when a few of them fell these also fled,' an awkwardly-expressed sentence.

34. ἐκ, 'in consequence of,' 'from,' the cause being regarded as the source.

35. πρὸς, I. 2. 29 n.

37. κελέσασα. The subject of the infinitive which follows verbs of 'commanding' is often omitted, as it can easily be supplied from the context.

38. πρὸς Δαρείου = an adjective, a force which the words get from being used with the article.

CH. 11.—7. ὡς νόμος, 'as his custom was.'

11. τὴν τιάραν ὁρθήν, 'was wearing his tiara erect'; those of subjects were flexible and the point fell sideways. Cp. Xen. Anab. II. 5. 23, τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλέα μόνῳ ἑστὶν ὁρθόν ἱσών. Quintus Curtius III. 3. 19, cistorum Persae vocabant reuginum capitis insigne: hoc cuerulae fascia albo distincta circumbas.

12. Περιστήμα στολῆ, consisting of a purple undergarment streaked with white over which lay a purple caftan (κάβδον). Curtius III. 3. 17, Cultus regis inter omnia luxuria notabatur: purpureae tunicae medium album intestum erat: pallam avro distinctam aurei accipitres, velut rostris inter se concurrerent, adornabant, et zona aurea muliebriter cinctus acinacem suspendebat, cui ex gemma vagina erat.

13. Αρταξέρξης, since Artaxerxes who had reigned so prosperously the kings who followed him changed their name and determined to bear his name as a title.

CH. 12.—10. ρέει usually contracts when ce come together.

13. Τυδοί, sc. ποραμοί.

15. ἐπιχειροῦντι, after ἐφαίνετο.

17. πρὸς λόγου, 'in proportion to.'

18. ὡς, consecutive.

20. οία [the accent shows it to be neut. pl.; the nom. fem. sing. would be οία].
Notes.

22. ἐφαίνετο ... μετίοιεν: observe the unusual form of the conditional sentence, G. § 226. 4. n. 1.
24. φορύτω, gen. of material after a word of fulness, G. § 172. 2.
25. ὁς ἔπροπάτος, 'as dry as possible.'
26. 'In order that no water might get into them.'
23. 'Quite (καὶ) a small detachment.'

CH. 13.—2. ἤνα, 'where,'
4. παραδόντας, conditional, 'if they gave up B.'
6. ἐπαν-ημε, from ἐπαν-ειμι.
9. γυμνόν, acc. after δύταντα.
14. ἀποθανόμενος, 'doomed to death.' He was afterwards mutilated by order of Alexander, and sent to Ecbatana and there put to death.
15. βασιλεία, 'capital.'

BOOK IV.

CH. 1.—1. πρὸς, 'on the banks of.'
4. 'Would be occupied conveniently for the expedition against the Scythians, if that should come about.'
8. σὺνίν, a late form = the Attic δυνίν.
10. ἄλλα ... γάρ, 'nevertheless.'
11. ταύτῃ, 'in this way.'
12. ἀν, 'from time to time.'
15. θάνατος, gen. after a verb implying want, G. § 172. 1.
16. 'Not reaching right up to the walls.'
20. λανθάνει παρελθὼν, 'he gets in unobserved,' G. § 279. 4.
22. τῶν πολέων, 'those of the gates which,' partitive genitive.
25. ἐπάπτησαν, strong aorist passive of τρέπω.

Notes.

27. κεφαλὴν, acc. of specification or respect, G. § 160. 1.
28. ἐξ-εισαγαγεῖν, weak aorist of ἐξ-ωθεῖν.

CH. 2.—3. 'Who by way of insulting Alexander bragged, as barbarians will, that A. would not have dared to touch the Scythians, or that (if he had) he would have learnt what the difference was (i.e., wherein lay the difference) between the S. and the Asiatic barbarians.'
9. ἔστων οἱ: see I. 3. 29 n.
13. ἔφοσιν, after πρὸς.
14. αὐτοῖς, 'on their side.' τετελευτήκα, augment is omitted.
15. τεταραχμένος, I. 8. 21 n. ὑπὸ, 'to the sound of.'
19. ὡς μη, 'to prevent their getting near the phalanx of the infantry while it was landing.'
21. ἔγνωμον, viz. the Scythians.
24. ἐς κύκλων, 'in circles.'
27. ἄρχεν, 'commanded.'

CH. 3.—2. ἔστε, 'until,' with the inf., after the analogy of πρῶς, is only found in late writers: see G. § 239; H. § 920 f.
4. εἰ καί, 'although' (as is the case); καί εἰ, 'even if' (supposing that).
6. 'And as the drinking advanced a stage.'
7. 'For drinking-bouts, as well as other matters (καί), had by this time been revolutionized by A. to a more barbaric fashion.'
8. νευσέρχετο, unaugmented pluperfect. ἀλλὰ (like δὲ elsewhere) introduces apodosis.
10. καὶ οἷον ἡγίσθην, 'said that in nothing could they compare,' etc.
12. διότε ἕν πάλαι ἄ., 'had long been evidently annoyed,' G. § 280. note 1.
13. αὐτόν, Alexander. πρὸς, as though the wine were a living agent.
16. 'For in fact (ὅπερ) neither were A.'s exploits.' οὐ, with the inf., in reported speech, so preserving the negative particle of direct speech.
Notes.

17. τι, 'at all.'
18. ἐπιθυμοῦ. Why indicative?
οὕδεμα ἧν δίκη. The place of the preposition between an adjective and its substantive is very unusual.
22. οὗτος, 'herein,' an idiomatic use of οὗτος.
23. ἐν ἑαυτοῦ, 'in his right mind,' Lat. apud se.
25. τολύς, 'vehement.'
26. ἄφα, 'after all.'
ὁπότε, 'when,' more often takes the optative and means 'whenever,' For the ἄροκος and Kleitus's act see I. 7. 57ff.
28. ἐν τῷ τότε, 'at that time.'
31. τέλος, 'in the end.'
33. τυόνο, gen. of the possessor.
34. ταύτη, instrumental dative.

CH. 4.—3. ἐπίλασαν, from πελάζω.
5. ἐσ τὴν προσβολὴν, 'against attack.'
6. ἄγγεικοςμεθάνου, middle.
9. διήγε, 'kept well supplied,' a rare but classical use: Demosth. 255. 11, ὁ πόλεμος ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς κατὰ τὸν βλω ἀδροφωτέρος διήγετο ὑμᾶς, 'the war kept you supplied with all the necessaries of life in greater abundance.'
11. 'Into jealousy for his honour mingled with chagrin.' έμ-βαθλίκεια, unaugmented pluperfect.
12. 'When he promised them that they shall have leave to go away unharmed to their own place if they gave up,' etc.
14. διραخ marks the apodosis.
16. 'As they take no thought of': the gen. absolute is more usual.
20. δη, 'accordingly.'
21. κατα-πεθήγεσαν, unaugmented pluperfect.
22. ἐκ λίθου, 'of flax'; cp. the Latin pocula ex auro, 'golden cups.'

23. ταύτη, 'on this account.'
25. ἄλλοι ἄλλη, 'some at one point, others at another point.'
27. ἄλλη καὶ ἄλλη, 'here and there in the snow' (partitive genitive).
30. παρηγγελμένον, acc. absolute.

CH. 5.—6. παίς, usually masculine.
11. ἔγημε, only of the man; γυμνόμενε, of the woman.

CH. 6.—11. 'And after adding to the settlement in A.'
18. Taxile, hereditary name of the prince who reigned at Taxila, just as the kings of Egypt were called Pharaoh. ὡς, a preposition, G. p. 177.
ἐπι τάδε, 'on this side.'
19. δεῦς ἵνα κάστος προχωρή, 'as each should find favourable opportunity.'
20. τὰ μ. νομιζόμενα, 'which was considered the greatest.'
25. κεῖσαί, 'bridge over.'

BOOK V.

CH. 1.—3. εἰσίν, from εἰμι, sum.
6. 7. διστομος. So also Strabo, but other geographers name seven months. The Danube has three main branches.
10. τὰ μάλιστα οὐκ ἀμφίλογα, 'namely, the details least open to question.'
καὶ εἰμι, as well as by others, e.g., Ctesias (contemporary with Xenophon) and Strabo (died about A.D. 24).
17. οὖν, 'in fact.'
18. The Hellespont was crossed on a bridge of boats by Xerxes on his way to invade Greece, b.c. 480.
The Bosporus and Ister (Danube) were crossed in like way by Xerxes’ father, Dareius, in his expedition against the Scythians.

21. οὐκ ἂν δεξάσθαι, ‘would not have allowed of a bridge (= ἔδεξασθο ἂν of direct narrative), nor would so huge an undertaking have been accomplished in so short a time.’ There is a monster bridge now in course of making in England which is to bridge the Indus.

CH. 2.—1. καί, ‘also.’
7. ‘Gives them more land from the adjoining territory as much as they wanted.’
11. ἐπ’ ἐκείνα, ‘on the other side,’ opp. to ἐπὶ τὰδε. The kingdom of Porus lay between the Hydaspes and Acesines, in modern Lahore, and contained about 300 towns.

CH. 3.—6. ἀδύνατος ἂν, ‘that he was unable.’ The participle is used, as usual, after a verb implying perception (see i. 8. 21 n.), and in the nominative (instead of the accusative), because the subject of the principal verb is also the subject of the participle, H. § 940; and for this same reason the subject of ἂν is omitted.
7. καὶ αὕτη, ‘and this, too.’
8. ἐκβαίνοντων, dative after ἐπιθέσθησθαι.
ἐπιθέσθησθαι: the future is the usual tense after μέλλω, H. § 846.
9. ‘He thought that the horses would refuse even to mount the opposite bank.’
12. Remember that φοβέω is transitive.
13. προσθέν, i.e., before reaching the other side.
15. κλέφαι, ‘carry out by craft,’ ‘steal the passage.’
16. ‘There was a projecting point of the bank.’
17. ἄλωσ, usually a sacred grove.
20. ἄμφιστρα, i.e., the island and the promontory. οἶα κρήσαι, ‘such as to conceal,’ H. § 1000.
24. τοῦ μὴ ἐστιν, ‘in order not to be.’

96. τῆς κάρφης, gen. of material with verb of fulness, G. § 172. 1.
παρεννεγμένης, perf. ptcp. pass. from παρ-φέρω.
27. ἐσ ἄκριβεαν, to a nicety, i.e., so that no hole was left in the suture.
ταύτη, ‘on this account.’
30. τῷ κτύπῳ, ‘was not betrayed (φανερά) by the clatter... because the claps of thunder and the rain made a counteracting din.’
33. κεκολύμητο, unaugmented pluperfect.
34. τῶν διδομένων, after ἐπι-βάος.
δομένω is acc. after ἐδέχομαι, its antecedent being some such word as αὐτός στρατιώτα.
36. ἐκ, ‘by.’
37. τρὶς: see i. 2. 29 n.
41. Lit., ‘as the horses of each had of swiftness,’ i.e., ‘as quickly as each man’s horse could go.’ ἐκαστός. As a rule ἐκαστός (in the singular) is used when each one is meant, ἐκαστοι meaning ‘each party.’

2. ἐφή περάσας, ‘succeeded in crossing first;’ G. § 279. 4, H. § 984.
5. αὐτῶν ἵππους, ‘horses and all,’ sometimes called the accessory dative; G. § 188. 5 n., H. § 774.
6. ἐπί, of the cause.
8. ἐντὸς βελους, ‘within range.’
10. ἄσωσε, ‘with the object of.’
15. ἐκ-ταθήναι, from ἐκ-τεινω.
18. τῇ ἀλάσῃ, ‘by their charge.’
24. ἔτι θάτερα, ‘to face the other way.
25. οὐδὲ, ne ... quidem.
κατ-ηράχην, from κατ-αράσσω.
29. οὐ πολλοὶ, ‘that is most of them,’ in apposition.
30. τὰ μὲν... τὰ δὲ, ‘partly.’
Notes.

35. ἀτε, with the causal participle, 'inasmuch as ...,' H. § 977.
   'Dealing with the beasts at their own discretion.'
36. ἐκών, 'always got out of their way.'
41. ἐπὶ πόθα, 'leisurely': cp. pedetentim.

CH. 5.—3. 'But, rather, so long as any part of the Indians remained and stood firm on the field.'
5. τῶν ὁμοῦ. The right shoulder alone was exposed.
6. τῶν, 'his.'
11. τοῦ Πόρου, to be taken with τὸ μέγεθος as well as with τὸ κάλλος.
12. τῇ γνώμῃ, 'in his disposition.'
14. 'What he would like done with him.'
15. λόγος, 'the story goes that.'
δὴ, introducing the direct words of Porus, is omitted in English.
χρήσαν, weak aorist imperative.
18. ἄξιον, active imperative; ἄξιον would have been middle.
21. 'In addition to the territory he possessed of old, and larger than his former territory.' Supply χώρα and χώρας after πάλαι and πρῶτον respectively.

CH. 6.—1. 'A. founded cities at the places where the battle took place, and from which he started and crossed the river H.'
4. οὐκεφάλα, gen. as above.
5. αὐτοῦ, 'there.' οὐ ... οὐδενὸς: in Greek two negatives do not as a rule make an affirmative.
8. ἀνα-βανόμενος, passive.
10. ἀπ-ηξίον, from ἀπ-ἀξίω.
11. ἐγ-κεχαραγμένη, from ἐγ-χαράσω. ἔφ' ὅτου, 'on which grounds.'

CH. 7.—3. τὴν χώραν, acc. of respect.
5, 6. καὶ ... δὲ: see I. 4. 35 n.

Notes.

9. ταῦτα ἔξαγγελλόμενα, 'the news of this,' the Greek preferring to do away with the abstract substantive.
11. ταῖς γνώμαις, dative of respect, H. § 780.
12. ἐκ, 'after,' 'in succession to.'
14. τῶν μὲν ... τῶν δὲ, 'some ... others.'

CH. 8.—'Even tears shed by full many showed still more clearly.'
3. τὸ, 'the fact that.'
6. αὐτὸς λέγει, 'that he meant to go.'
τοῖς πρόσω, partitive genitive.
9. 'It was allowed ... to go away and announce to their kinsfolk that they have returned and had left their king,' etc.
12. προσ-έσται, aor. mid. of προσ-ημι.
14. ὑπομένοντα, 'waiting to see.'
15. ὅτα, 'as.'
18. δῆλοι ἡγεῖν, 'it was evident that they were,' G. § 305. n. 1.
20. ἐπὶ, 'with a view to.'
24. ἐφ' ἑρεν, 'were tending.'
ἐγνωσταῖ, 'has determined.'

BOOK VI.

CH. 1.—2. τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν, the Indian Ocean.
4. τῶν νεών, with ἐπὶ in composition, G. § 177.
5. ὁς γόμας, 'as was his custom.'
τῷ 'Ὅ., 'together with the H.'
9. σημάναι: the subject of the infinitive ('the trumpeter') is omitted as usual after κηλεῖο.
10. ἀν-ηγοντο, 'were getting under weigh.'
11. ἔφ' ὅσων, 'at what intervals.'
13. ὡς μὴ, ‘in order not....’
14. ‘The quick-sailing vessels were ordered not to get ahead out of the line.’

CH. 2.—9. δὴ μὴ, ‘except.’
11. καὶ ... δῇ, ‘and especially.’
13. ὅσον γε, ‘that is all whose ships were caught in the stream, because they had not got them in time into deep water.’
14 ὡς, ‘so that.’ μεταφηςεύειν, lit., ‘lift up’: as the horizon seems raised up to one on land, the word comes to= ‘to get out to sea.’

CH. 3.—3. τῇ πρώτῃ, ‘on the first (day).'</n4. πρὸς ἔθαι, ‘on the banks of a small lake.’
7. ‘He orders anyone who has a vessel to fill it with water.’
10. συμφεύεσθαι, unaugmented pluperfect.
11. ἐν ἔλευθερω = ὅτι ἔλεος ἐν.
14. ‘Without even their resorting to self-defence, seeing they were unarm’d.’
15. ἵνα, ‘whither’; usually in prose means ‘where’ (of rest in a place), but cp. Thuc. 4. 74, ἵνα περ καὶ τὸ πρώτον ἄρμαντο, ‘which had been his original destination.’
20. ἐμύνοντο, ‘went on defending himself.’
22. πολλοῖς, ‘in great quantity.’ οἷα δῇ, ‘as is the case then,’ etc.
23. εἰκρνεῖς, ptcp. aor. from εἰκρνω.
26. ‘Was having his wound tended.’
31. οἰκουμῆς, genitive of separation.
32. ἔρημομενος ἐσται, ‘will be leader to the army’; the ptcp. = a substantive.
33. ὅπως, with the future indicative dependent on a verb of considering, seeing, taking measures, and the like, here represented by ἄροι ἄροι, is to be carefully distinguished from ὅπως, ‘in order that,’ with the subjunctive. Here ὅπως is merely the indirect way of expressing πῶς ἄποσω ζησόμεθα; ‘how shall we get away safely?’
35. ἐν μήνῃ εἶναι, ‘to be surrounded by.’
36. Ἀλέξανδρον, gen. of separation.
38. ἐν-εχώρησαν, ‘gave credence.’
41, ‘that he is even likely to live.
44. ὡς καταφανῆς εἶναι, ‘that he might be,’ καταφανῆς being nominative because it forms part of Alexander’s words and refers to the subject (i.e., to Alexander himself).
49. πολλοῖς, dat. of the agent, G. § 188. 3.
50. ἄκοψα, ‘involuntarily,’ adj. agreeing with δάκρυα.

CH. 4.—6. ἰδὲ marks the apodosis of the sentence.
8. μάλιστα ταχυναυτόφα, the quickest sailing ships.
10. πεφυγέσαν, unaugmented. ‘As he had no pilot for (lit. ‘of’) his voyage, his voyage down river was rather difficult.’ τὰ τοῦ κ. = ὁ κατάπλους.
12. ‘On the next day after the start.’ ῥῶ (= Attic ῥὁ), dat. after ἑπεννευτός.
13. κολλὼν, ‘caused a swell in the river.’
15. ἀναχείτα πέρι ἔρχος, ‘spreads into a broad stream.’
16. ἐντάσσοντας αὐτὸς αὐτοῦ, at its widest; the superlative is idiomatic.
17. τὸ τε πνεῦμα, ‘and when the wind’; understanding ὥσ from above, line 14.
20. τὸ πάθημα, ‘the well-known phenomenon.’
22. ἐγνωκόσι, ‘as they had not yet experienced it.’
23. καὶ αὐτό, ‘even in itself.’
26, 29. ἰδὲ merely marks the apodosis.

CH. 5.—2. τῇ πολλῇ, instead of the neut. with partitive gen.; the adjective takes the gender of the substantive. H. § 730 ε.
33. ἔρημον τὴν πολλήν, ‘a desert, that is most of it,’ agreeing with some such word as χώραν understood, and in apposition with Γαδρωσθεῖς, which is not the name of the people (see 7. 18).
3. λέγει governs the following accusative and infinitives.
5. καρά, 'in the case of.'

Phoenicians, the traders of antiquity, representing the Jews (who were close of kin to them) of to-day. Tyre and Sidon and also Carthage were their chief centres of commerce. Their ships returned to their native shores bringing with them sandal wood from Malabar, spices from Arabia, fine linen from Egypt, ostrich plumes from the Sahara. Cyprus gave them its copper, Elba its iron, the coast of the Black Sea its manufactured steel. Silver they brought from Spain, gold from the Niger, tin from the Scilly Isles, and amber from the Baltic. Where they sailed, there they planted factories which opened a caravan trade with the interior of vast continents hitherto regarded as inaccessible,” etc. See Bosworth Smith's Rome and Carthage, pp. 2 ff.

10. 'And there was a great deal of it which was trodden down by the army.'

CH. 6.—2. 'That not even all the sufferings.
4. τό καῦμα, acc., subject to δια-φθείραν.
7. κεκαυμένη, 'red-hot.'
10. καὶ ἐκούσας, 'and with consent of the army.'
15. οὐδὲ...οὖδὲ, 'not even...nor yet,' not correlation, that is to say they do not mean 'neither...nor,' which would be οὔτε...οὔτε. H. § 1043 a.
16. ἢν, 'was it possible.
19. ἤγεσθαι, dact.
24. 'And neither were there any to convey them, nor to stay and tend them.'
25. 'And in the eagerness touching the expedition as a whole individuals were of necessity neglected.

CH. 7.—2. πεζόν, adj., 'on foot.' ἦγεσθαι, 'led the way,' κουφοτέρως, formed from a comparative as βεβαιοτέρως, καλλιόνως. H. § 250 a.
10. A curiously parallel act is told of David: 1 Chron. xi. 16 f., "And David was then in the hold, and the Philistines' garrison was then at Bethlehem. And David longed, and

said, O that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem, that is at the gate! And the three [captains] brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Beth-lehem, that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David: but David would not drink of it, but poured it out to the Lord.'
15. 'That one would suppose that the water which had been poured out by Alexander had supplied a draught [lit., had turned out to be a drink] to the whole army.'
16. ἐστ, 'as tending to establish.'

CH. 8.—ὑπάρχον: the verb is ἂπεκτενεν, line 7.
3. ὡς, 'as for instance'; the accusatives which follow are in apposition with τολῇ, the numerous charges alleged.
6. ἐξ-ηλέγχῃ, 'thoroughly proved.'
7. ὡς = διοῦ.
9. πλημμελοῦντας, 'by transgressing.' πείσθαι, future of πάσχω, depends on δέος εἶναι.
10. ἐξ = ἔστ, 'a rare usage in Attic; H. § 798 c.

CH. 9.—3. εἶναι. Why the infinitive?
4. παράδεικτος, strictly 'enclosure,' being an adaptation of an Oriental (probably Persian) word.
ἐκέννο, like ἢδε = 'that notable, that notorious Cyrus.'
8. καταστημανεόν: notice the force of the middle. Cytus, son of Cambyses, defeated the Medes under Astyages, and transferred the supremacy to the Persians, b.c. 559.
9. Ἀσιας, genitive, H. § 741.
On the construction of φθονῆσις with gen. of cause, see H. § 744.
13. ἐλάβησαντο, had, etc.

BOOK VII.

CH. 1.—3. Barsine: she is known also by the names of Arsinoe and Stateira.
5. Ochus had been king of Persia before Dareius.


Alexander professed by his own marriages and the alliances forced on his officers to unite the conquered kingdoms to his own.

CH. 2.—5. ‘He intends to give them when they go such extra (ἐπὶ οὐ) presents as will make them objects of greater envy to those at home.’

8. δήθεν, ‘as he imagined.’

13. ἐς τοῦτο φέρεσα, ‘conducing to this result.’

14. The soldiers were annoyed at the levies of native troops which arrived armed in the Macedonian fashion, and at the incorporation of foreign cavalry into the exclusive ἑταῖροι.

16. ‘But bade him disband them all’ (and not only the disabled and unserviceable).


30. ὑμῖν, dativus commodi, rather than dative of the agent.

CH. 3.—5. ἐρίθστον, from ἐρίπτω, a non-Attic form.

ιερειπίας, ‘as propitiatory offerings,’ in apposition with δεῖ. Notice that the Greek idiom prefers that the adjective or pronoun should agree with the predicate; hence ταύτας, not ταύτα.

6. ἐβόων, tense.

12. δὲ introduces the apodosis.

13. ἢδον ... ἀκούσας ... αὐτῷ. The construction is confused; it should strictly have ended in the active form, ‘he shed tears.’

15. τὸ γε ἀπὸ τοῦτον, ‘henceforth at all events.’

CH. 4.—3-7. ‘But, as it seems to me, the majority were composed of those who offered him crowns and encomiums on ...and of those who expressed their joy at his safe return from India.’ ὅκειν, inf. absolute, usually introduced by ὅς. The crowns spoken of were of gold: cp. Liv. vii. 38, Carthaginienes ... legatos ... misere cum coronae aureae dono.

8. τὰ εἰκότα, a kind of cognate accusative.

13. εἴκων. Arrian says elsewhere that these were placed in the Ceraulecians at Athens. Harmodius and Aristogeiton were close friends, who assassinated in B.C. 514 Hipparchus, brother of Hippias the tyrant. His expulsin in B.C. 510 gained for his sons the reputation of being their country’s savours, though both were put to death for their murder of Hipparchus.

CH. 5.—2. ἐφημερίδες: see Introduction.

3. Remember that Medium is here a man’s name.

6. πορρὸ τῶν νυκτῶν, ‘for into the night;’ for the plural form cp. μέσα νύκτις.

πότου, gen. of separation; H. § 748.

8. αὐτοῦ, i.e., in the bath-chamber.

9. ἐπὶ-θήνα, ‘placed’ (on the altar).

10. ἐν τούτῳ, ‘meanwhile.’

14. πλευσόμενος, fut. ptcp. of πλέω.

21, 22. Join αὐτοῦ ... θάνατον.

23. βιάσασθαι: the inf. depends on ἀναγέγραται, l. 18, ‘the mass of them from grief and longing for their king forced their way in to look upon A.’

27. δή, ‘so.’

28. τῷ ... ἐρχόμενος: see I. 1. 1 n.

30. ‘And of the third (i.e., the 33rd) he reached eight months.’

Note on the Φάλαγξ.

The Ἀραξασt was the most remarkable feature in the Macedonian army, and was brought to perfection by Philip, father of Alexander. The soldiers composing it are sometimes called
Notes.

πεταροφος, ‘foot-companions’ (contrast ἐπαθροφος, a name applicable to cavalry).

Their characteristic arm of offence was the σάρωσα, a lance or pike of almost incredible length, which required both hands to wield it. According to Polybius this lance was no less than 16 cubits long, or perhaps only 14 (=21 feet) as used in the field, the longer one being reserved for practice.

The σάρωσα projected 15 feet before the body of the man who held it; and, as each man stood 3 feet behind his front rank man, the lances of the 5th rank actually projected 3 feet in front of the whole line. The lances of the remaining ranks rested on the shoulders of those in front and formed a solid protection against missiles.

The phalanx was composed as follows:

σύνταγμα = square of 16 men = 256 men.
4 συντάγματα = χιλιαρχία (or τάξις) = 1024
4 χιλιαρχίαι = φάλαγξ = 4096

It is obvious that, on open ground, this array of spears projecting from squares of 256 troops, combined with the weight of their charge, would be most formidable: the weakness of the formation lay in its immobility.

VOCABULARY.

[N.B.—Proper names are in a separate Vocabulary.]

Words ending in -ος are (unless marked neuter, when they make gen. in -ος) declined like λόγος. 2 after word = 2 terminations.

A

ἀ-βιβαίος, insecure; adv., ἀ-βιβαίως.
ἀγάδος, good, brave.
ἀγαλμα, n., image.
ἀγαπάω, am content.
ἀγγος, n., vessel, pitcher.
ἀγγελία, message, tidings.
ἀγνήμα, n., a troop in Macedonian army, body-guard.
ἀγορά, market-place.
ἀ-γρυπνία, sleeplessness.
ἀγω, lead, bring; intrans. (quasi την στρατιάν), march.
ἀγών, ἀγώ, m., battle, mimic battle, athletic contest.
ἀγωνίζομαι, fight.
ἀ-διά-βαρος, impassable.
ἀ-δίκοιω, do wrong, injure.
ἀ-δικύμος, disapproved, not approved of.
ἀ-εἰ, always, successively.
Ἀ-θήνης, at Athens (locative).
ἀθλον, prize.

ἀθρόος, collected, in crowds.
ἀ-θυμία, want of heart, dispiritedness.
ἀϊδώς, ois, f., respect.
ἀικήω, outrage.
ἀιρέω, take, seize; αἰρέωμαι, choose.
αιρεω, take up, lift; ἀ-στρα-πέδων, strike camp.
αιρήμαι, perceive.
αιχρός, disgraceful, shameful.
αιχύρωμα, am ashamed.
αιτεῖν, ask, demand.
αιτία, cause, blame.
αιχ-άλωτος, captive in war [aiχαλωτos = spear].
ἀ-κινδύνος, without risk; adv., ἀ-κινδύνως.
ἀκμαίος, at its height; τὸ ἀκμαῖον τοῦ χειμῶνος, the depth of winter.
ἀκοή, report, hearsay.
ἀκολούθω, follow (w. dat.).
ἀκόντιον, javelin.
ἀκούω, hear, listen.
## Vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek Word</th>
<th>English Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἀναγράφω, describe, state.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-άγω, lead up; in mid., weigh anchor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀγωγη, setting sail.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀχύρνυμ, break up camp, return.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀθαρσίω, take courage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀμπλανάω, take, take up; aor., ἀνέλαβον.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀμίγνυμ, mix, blend; aor., ἀνέμισα.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀπάω, give rest, recruit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀπανᾶμ, open out, spread; πρ. particp. pass. = παπανέμως.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀπόδω, leap up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀπόστευν, unfold, open out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀριθμοῦμ, break up, break through.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀστρεφώ, overturn; in mid., rally, wheel round, be conversant with (=versari).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσώμ, save.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀταρράττω, throw into confusion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀτελῶ, stretch on high, wave (of hand); pass. ἄντεταρο used actively, lifted on high, i. 7. 57.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀτιθημία, offer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀφέμα, bring up, refer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀφύγεω, fly for refuge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀξομα, spread (lit. pour oneself).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀξορέω, retreat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπασίζω, enslave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπασίζω, enslave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀν-ἀσπιάσ, ἀντος, m., statue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vocabulary.

ἀξίω-μαχοῦ, fit to fight with, sufficient.
ἀξίος, worthy, deserving (w. gen.); λόγον ἀξίος, worthy of record.
ἀξίω, count worthy, demand, ask for.
ἀξίωτες, f., character, claim.
ἀπ-άγαν, lead away.
ἀ-πάθης, unsouled, unhurt.
ἀπ-ἀλλάττειν, get rid of; aor. pass., ἀπελλάττειν.
ἀπαντάω, meet.
ἀπαντάω, once.
ἀπ-ἀξίοω, regard as unworthy, disdain.
ἀπασι, ας, α, all, each; εις ἀπα, altogether.
ἀπ-έθανον. See ἀπο-θάνειν.
ἀπ-εμι, go away.
ἀπ-εμι, be away.
ἀπ-έρχομαι, get off.
ἀπ-έχω (w. gen.), remove from; intrins., be distant; in mid., refrain from.
ἀ-πιστεύω, am distrustful.
ἀ-πιστικός, assert strongly.
ἀπό, w. gen., from, away from; τὰ ἀπὸ ταλασσών, affairs at sea.
ἀπο-βάλλω, disembark, come off, happen.
ἀπο-βατάρδος, of disembarking (epithet of Zeus).
ἀπο-βαφάζω, disembark (transitive).
ἀπο-γινώσκω, decide against.
ἀπο-γόνος, descendant.
ἀπο-γράφομαι, enrol oneself; pass., be enrolled.
ἀπο-δεικνύμι, display.
ἀπο-δειν, be in want of.
ἀπο-δίδωμι, present, pay.
ἀπο-θνήσκω, die, be put to death; aor., ἀπὸ-θάνατον, fitt., ἀπο-θανατίσθαι.
ἀπο-θράβευ, break off, strike off.
ἀπο-κεμα, be stored away.
ἀπο-κομίζω, carry away, bring out.
ἀπο-κόπτω, cut off.
ἀπο-κρίνομαι, answer.
ἀπο-λαμβάνω, aor., ἐλαβο, take.
ἀπο-λείπω, leave, desert.
ἀ-πλεομος, unwarlike.
ἀπο-μαχοῦ, hors de combat.
ἀ-ποπτος, seen clearly; è ἀπόπτω, in view.
ἀ-πορος, without resource, without plan; adv., ἀπόρος ἔχειν, to be in difficulty.
ἀπο-ρήγγυμι, break off.
ἀπο-σκέδασσαι, scatter, disperse.
ἀπο-παρασις, f., revolt.
ἀπο-πτρέφω, turn away home.
ἀπο-σφαξω, slaughter.
ἀ-ποσώκω, preserve, deliver.
ἀπο-τείχισθαι, wall off.
ἀπο-τοιχος, 2 shear, abrupt, steep [τέμω = cut].
ἀ-πτεσ, without drink.

ἀπο-φαίνω, show, display, set forth.
ἀπο-φεύγω, flee, run away.
ἀπο-χωρέω, retreat, retire.
ἀπομακ, (w. gen.), lay hands on, reach.
ἀπ-οθέω, beat back.
ἀράττω, dash against.
ἀρετή, courage, virtue.
ἀριθμός, number; τῶν ἀριθμῶν, in number.
ἀριστερός, left.
ἀρμα, n., chariot.
ἀρμάζω, litter.
ἀρχαιός, ancient.
ἀρχή, beginning, authority, empire.
ἀρχο, rule (w. gen.); mid., begin.
ἀρχων, ὀρτος, ruler: at Athens, archon; the chief archon gave his name to the year in which he held office.
ἀ-σθενής, weak.
ἀ-στος, without food.
ἀστίς, idos, f., shield.
ἀ-στιβής, wondrous.
ἀστρον, star.
ἀ-σφάλλω, safety, security.
ἀ-σφαλής, safe; adv., ἀσφαλῶς, without danger.
ἀ-τάκτως, adv., in a disorderly way, in disorder.
ἀ-τασφαλῆς, 2 presumptions, wicked.

ἄτε, particle of comparison (= ὅς).
ἄ-τομος, strange, out of the way.
ἀρέτης, strictly true.
ἀττα = ἕως.
ἀς, moreover, again.
ἀδελφος, again.
ἀλλιόμαι, bivouac.
ἀλήφω, make grow, enhance, increase; mid., increase, grow.
ἀντο-μάλεω, desert, be a deserter.
ἀντο-μολος, deserter.
ἀντο-νομος, independent, autonomous.
ἀντός, ὁ, he, she, it, self; καὶ ἀντός, himself too; ὁ ἄντος, the same; in dative (called the accessory dative), ἀντῷ ἄμω, waggon and all.
ἀντοῦ, adv., there.
ἀντοῦ = ἑαυτοῦ.
ἀντήν, ἐνος, m., neck.
ἀφ-αρέω, take away.
ἀ-φανής, out of sight, indistinct: adv., ὄς.
ἀ-φανέω, cause to disappear, do away with.
ἀ-φανής, shooting (ἰμα).
ἀ-φαγόμαι, narrate.
ἀ-φίστημι, in intras. parts (2 aor. perf. plupf.), be distant, be in revolt.
ἀ-φίσσω, abundance [φόνος, grudging].
ἀ-φυκόμαι, arrive; perf. ἀφ-γιμαι, aor. ἀφ-κόμισθαι.
Vocabulary.

άφ-οράω, see clearly [lit., look off from other objects], impf., εἴδωρ.
ά-φιλάκτος, unguarded.
ά φωνής, voiceless.
ά-χαρις, thankless.
ά-χορμα, be burdened, grieved.
ά-χρείος, useless.

B.
βάδην, slowly, gradually.
βάθος, n., depth.
βαθύς, εία, [a], deep, steep.
βάλλω, throw, cast, strike.
βαρβαρίζω, act the barbarian, side with barbarians.
βαρβαρικός, barbarous, foreign.
βαρβαρός, barbarian [not a Greek].
βαρύς, εία, [a], heavy.
βαρύτης, τύρος, f., heaviness.
βασιλεία, kingdom.
βασιλέας, 2 royal; τὰ βασιλεία, palace.
βασιλευόμαι, king.
βασιλεύω, be king, reign.
βασιλικός, royal.
βέβαιος, sure, steadfast.
βελτίωτος, best [irreg. superlative of ἄγαθός].
βίλας, n., weapon.
βήμα, n., platform.
βία, violence.
βίάζομαι, dep., compel, constrain.

βίαιος,3 violent; adv., βιαιώ.
βία, life.
βίω, live; aor., ἔβιω.
βίωσις, worth living, likely to live.
βλάπτω, hurt, injure, damage.
βόα, cry aloud, shout.
βοή, loud cry, shout.
βοήθεια, help, rescue.
βοήθω, help, rescue (w. dat.).
βοωτάρχεω, be a Boeotarch (see note).

βουλεύειν, decide; mid., take counsel.
βουλομαι, dep., wish, will.
βούς, βόος, c., ox, cow, cattle.
βραχύς, εία, [a], short, little.
βροντή, thunder.
βωμός, altar.

Γ.
γαμβρός, son-in-law, brother-in-law [gener].
γάμος, marriage; in plur., wedding-feast.
γαμέω, marry (of the man);
γαμούμαι, of the woman.
γάρ, for.
γε, at least; generally emphasizes the word to which it is joined.
γέλως, εία, [a], laughter.
γεναιοί,3 noble, fine.
γένος, n., race, extraction, tribe.
γέρας, αος (os), n., reward, honour.

γέρρος, oblong wicker-shield.
γεώργιος, (w. gen.), taste.
γέφυρα, bridge.
γεφύρω, bridge over.
γεφύρωσις, bridging over.
γῆ, earth, land.
γήλοφος, hillock, mound.
γύρας, aos (os), n., old age.
γίγνομαι, become, am, result; aor., ἔγινομαι.

γνώσκω, know, decide, plan; τὰ ἐγνωσμένα, the decision.

γνώμη, mind, meaning, intention, disposition.
γόνυ, αος, n., knee.
γράφω, write.

γυμνικός,3 w. ἀγών, gymnastic contest, games.

γυμνός,3 stripped, exposed.

γυνή, aος, woman, wife.

Δ.

δαμάντος,3 strange, lucky.
δάκρυν, tear; gum (of trees).
δαρός, εία, [a], thick, bushy.
δέ, but, and; answers to μέν.
δεί, (opportet), it should be.

δεινός,3 dreadful, awful.
δεινεύω, sup.

deinoun, supper.

dεινόν-πολεω, provide supper; mid., sup.

Δέλτα, triangle formed by the coast line and two converging streams, from the shape Δ.

dέμοι, build.

dέομαι, ask for, want something (w. gen.).

dέφθρον, tree, shrub.

dεξιόμαι, welcome.

dεος, n., fear.

dειμός, bond, chain, fastening.

dεπερός,3 second.

dεω, desire, want. See δέομαι.

dεόω, δέοω, bind.

dή, really, truly, I may tell you; μέν δή, then.

dήθεν, as was said.

dήλος,3 obvious, clear.

dήλω, make evident, prove.

dή-που, I suppose.

dιά, w. gen., by means of; of time, διὰ μακροθή, at a long interval; w. acc., because of; on account of (sometimes = gen.).

δια-βάλλω, thrust through.

diá-βαίνω, cross.

diá-βαβαίσιος, cross (active).

diá-βολή, cry aloud.

dι-άγω, keep, pass (as of time).

dia-δύο, (aor., διδύω), slip into.

di-αρέω, divide.

dia-κορίζω, convey.

dικέκατος,3 two hundred.

dia-κρίνω, decide.

Διαμπάξ, right through.
Vocabulary.

Diá-πράττομαι, carry a business through, transact.
Diá-πρεπής, pre-eminent, conspicuous.
Diá-αρκτίς, sufficient, adequate.
Diá-τέχνη, shake in pieces.
Diá-σπάω, tear asunder.
Diá-σώλω, deliver, rescue, preserve.
Diá-τεχνή, wall across.
Diá-τέμνω, cut in two.
Diá-τρησσω, delay.
Diá-φορος, different, differing from.
Diá-φθείρω, destroy, corrupt (= bide).
Diá-φυγάνω, escape.
Diá-φυλάττω, watch, be on the watch.
Diá-χαόμαι, be intimate with (dat.) consume.
Di-έρχομαι, go through.
Di-έξω, stand apart, open out (ranks).
Di-ητελής, continuous.
Diμιος, dat. of Zeus.
Diκαιος, just.
Diκη, right, justice, quarrel.
Diψή, whirlpool, eddy.
Diός, gen. of Zeus.
Diός-κορμα, sons of Zeus, Castor and Pollux.
Di-ορύττεν, dig through, break into.
Di-πλος (oü), double.
Diσ-μύριοι, 20,000.

Σί-στομος, with two mouths (of rivers).
Σικχ(λιος), two thousand.
Συφθέρα, hide.
Sigma, in two parts.
Σιφος, n., thirst.
Σιώκω, pursue; verbal adj., διώκεται.
Σεφρες, f., ditch, canal.
Σιγχες, f., pursuit.
Σικέω, seem; δεικεί μοι, it seems to me, I think; δεικε, it was determined.
Σόχα, opinion, reputation.
Σόχα, conjecture.
Σορ-άλλωτος, captive of the spear.
Σόφος, n., spear.
Σφάκων, orontes, m., dragon.
Σφαός, do.
Σφεταν-φόρος, scythe-bearing [epith. of άρμα].
Σφόδρος, running; δρόμος, at the double.
Σφίμαμαι, able, can.
Σφίμας, f., might, a force (of soldiers).
Σφιντός, capable, able, influential.
Σίδω, two.
Συρ-χωρία, unfavourable ground.
Σάδεκα, twelve.
Σώρον, gift.

Ε.
έλων. See άλισκομαι.

έαρ(γ), ἄρ, w. subjunctive, if.
έαπ (gen., 'étos, dat., ेρι), the spring.
έαυτόν, ἐν, ὦ, himself, herself, itself.
έαω, suffer, allow.
έβδομάς, on the seventh day.
έβδομήκοντα, seventy.
έγγυς, near (with gen.).
έγκατα-λαμβάνω, overtake.
έγκατα-λείπω, leave.
έγκεμαι, lie in, lie on, press upon.
έγκελεώ, give orders, command.
έγκλινα, bend; intrans., set (of sun).
έγκυρως, (aor., ενέκυροσ), meet with.
έγκχαρτο, engrave.
έγκχαρτο, put into the hands of.
έθανος, n., building, foundation.
έθρας, stationary, fixed.
έθλος, will, intend (cp. θλω). έθνος, n., people, nation.
έλ, if, whether; έλ ποτε, if ever.
έλθω. See άραω.
έλκαχω, conjecture.
έλκω, yield, give way (w. dat.).
έλκη, at random.
έλκς, ἕρ, n., probability; έλκς (έστι), it is probable.
έλκος, twenty.
έλκων, ἐρώτας, f., image.
έλέω, roll up, crowd together.

έλιμ, am.; impf., ἔρ, ἔστι, it is possible; ἔστιν ὁ, there are some (cp. sunt quid).
έλιμ, I will go; impf., ἔμω.
ελπη, if ever.
ελτάν, ptep. aor. of φημι.
ελπιον, check, keep out.
ελπια, rowing.
ελ (έσ), into, against, up to, with regard to (w. aec.); of time and numbers, about.
ελό-ακοντίζω, to shoot against.
ελ-βάινω, enter in.
ελ-πίπτω, fall in.
ελόω (w. gen.), within.
ελτα, then.
ελαι, impf. of ἐλαῖω.
ελ, ἐ (w. gen.), out of, from, through; ἐλ πολλόν, from a long time; ἐλ πάντων φυτά, general flight.
ελκός, each.
ελκάτερος, either (of two).
ελκάτερος, either (of two).
Εκατομβαίνω, Attic month.
ελκαιν, hundred.
εκατοστός, ἐος, f., the number 100.
εκ-βαίνω, disembark, go out.
εκ-βαίνω, disembarkation.
εκ-βοικέω, come out to rescue.
εκ-βολή, outflow (of a river).
εκ-δομέω, aor. inf. of ἐκ-τρέχω, run out.
εκ-δομή, sortie, sally.
εκ-δέω, put off; aor. part., ἐκ-δάεω.


\textbf{Vocabulary.}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ἐκεῖ}, there.
  \item \textit{ἐκείθεν}, thence.
  \item \textit{ἐκεῖνος}, that; \textit{ἐπὶ ἐκεῖνα}, on the other side.
  \item \textit{ἐκεῖσε}, thither.
  \item \textit{ἐκέω}, run out.
  \item \textit{ἐκάμψο}, weary out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-κλησθαί}, assembly.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πέμπω}, send out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-περι-ἐρχόμαι}, go all round.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πηδάω}, leap off.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πέττω}, fall out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πλήσσις}, f., astonishment.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πλήττω}, astonish; 2 aor. pass., ἐκπλάγων.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πνεύω}, (in mid.) breathe forth, faint.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-πολιορκεῖ}, take by siege.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-ρέω}, flow out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-ρουσ}, outflow.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-στρέφω}, wrench out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-τάττω}, marshal, draw up.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-τένω}, stretch out.
  \item \textit{ἐκτός}, sixth.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-φαίνω}, make clear.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-φαντάζομαι}, depreciate, reduce to meanness.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-φορέω}, carry out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-φουν}, out of one’s senses, mad.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-χέω}, (aor. ἐχέω), flow out.
  \item \textit{ἐκ-μών}, 6, 6, willing.
  \item \textit{ἐλαιός}, olive tree.
  \item \textit{ἐλαστιξ}, f., expedition, cavalry-charge.
  \item \textit{ἐλαττώω}, worse; in pass., be worsted.
  \item \textit{ἐλαίνω}, drive; intrans., march, make expedition; aor., ἔλαεσα.
  \item \textit{ἐλέφας}, aor. m., elephant.
  \item \textit{ἐλίνω}, keep holiday, be idle, delay.
  \item \textit{ἐλθών}, ptcp. aor. of ἔρχομαι.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-βάλλω}, throw in; of a river, empty itself.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-βοῶ}, announce loudly.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-βόλον}, wedge, ram [cp. cuneus].
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-παλινι}, again.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-παιδία}, skill, experience.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-πίπτωμαι}, burn (fut. τρησίω).
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-πέπτω}, (aor., ἐν-έπεσον), fall upon.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-πλέω}, sail as a passenger.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-πλῆθος}, (aor., ἐν-πληθυόμαι), fill full (gen.).
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-πορία}, merchandise.
  \item \textit{ἐμ.-φαγεῖ}, aor. inf. of ἐν-εσθιώ, eat.
  \item \textit{ἐν}, (w. dat.) in, on; ἐν τοῖς, meanwhile; ἐν παρασκεύα εἰμι, be making preparations.
  \item \textit{ἐν-άγω}, egg on.
  \item \textit{ἐν-αντίς}, opposite; adv., ἐναντία; ὀ ἐναντίος, adversary.
  \item \textit{ἐν-δέω}, want (w. gen.).
  \item \textit{ἐν-δηλος}, manifest, obvious.
  \item \textit{ἐν-δοια}, want.
  \item \textit{ἐν-δίδωμι}, yield, give in, surrender.
  \item \textit{ἐνδοθεν}, from within.
  \item \textit{ἐν-δοσμος}, yielding.
  \item \textit{ἐν-δροσος}, dry.
  \item \textit{ἐν-εμι}, be in, be contained in.
  \item \textit{ἐνέκα}, for sake of (w. gen.).
  \item \textit{ἐνθα}, where.
  \item \textit{ἐνθεν}, thence; ἐ ταῖ ἐν, on either side.
  \item \textit{ἐν-ππάξομαι}, ride on horseback, ride in.
  \item \textit{ἐντάθα}, there, here.
  \item \textit{ἐν-τέλλω}, give orders, command, enjoin.
  \item \textit{ἐντεθεν}, thence.
  \item \textit{ἐν-τελής}, entire, full, complete, in good condition.
  \item \textit{ἐντός}, (w. gen.) within; ἐντός βέλως, within range.
  \item \textit{ἐν-υπνούν}, dream.
  \item \textit{ἐξ}, six.
  \item \textit{ἐξ}, See ἐκ.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αγγέλλω}, proclaim.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αρέω}, race to the ground, choose out.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ακοντίζω}, shoot from out.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ακόσιος}, 3, six hundred.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αναγκάζομαι}, compel.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ανδραποδίζω}, enslave.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-άρχω}, begin with something (w. gen.).
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αλαίανω (sc. στρατιάν), set out; (ὑπ' ἐπι) ride.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αλήγχω}, refute, convince, prove.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-άλκω}, drag out.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-έρχομαι}, come out.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-εύρισκω}, find out.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ηγοροῦμαι}, guide, rule, govern.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ήκο}, arrive (of time fully come).
  \item \textit{ἐξ-έχωντα}, sixty.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-έμι}, send out; (of a river) debouch.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-ονεδίω}, reprove.
  \item \textit{ἐξω}, outside (w. gen.).
  \item \textit{ἐξουθεν}, from without.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-οθέω}, thrust forth.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-οικέω}, announce.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-άγω}, lead against; aor., ἐνέγαγον.
  \item \textit{ἐξ-αύξω}, praise.
  \item \textit{ἐπ-αἰρω}, extol.
  \item \textit{ἐπάνω}, when, ever since.
  \item \textit{ἐ-πον-αιρέω}, undertake.
  \item \textit{ἐ-π-εμί, go back.
  \item \textit{ἐ-πον-έρχομαι}, return again.
  \item \textit{ἐ-πον-ήκω}, I have come back.
  \item \textit{ἐπεί}, since, when.
  \item \textit{ἐπείδή}, as, since.
  \item \textit{ἐ-που-πτώ, fall upon.
  \item \textit{ἐπετρά}, therewpon.
  \item \textit{ἐ-π-εκ-βαίνω}, disembark.
  \item \textit{ἐ-π-ελαίνω}, (sc. ἵππον), ride against (w. dat.).
  \item \textit{ἐπομαι}, follow.
  \item \textit{ἐ-πέσω, bear upon.
  \item \textit{ἐτί}, w. gen., towards, upon (ἐτί βεβού), in the time of (ἐ-περί ἀνθρώποι...), ἐτι δεικνύω, at what
intervals; w. dat., upon (αλλοι, éπι' αλλοις, one after another), with an eye to, for; w. acc., against, to; éπι τοῦ, to a great extent, éπι τάδε, this side.

éπι-βαίνω, mount, go on board.

éπι-γίγνομαι, come upon, become in addition.

éπι-γράφω, inscribe.

éπι-δείκνυμι, display, show.

éπι-δια-βαίνω, cross over after.

éπι-διώκω, give besides.

éπι-θορύ, presentation.

éπι-ευχής, complaisant, orderly.

éπι-θυμέω, desire, long for (w. gen.).

éπι-καλέω, call in to help; pass. ptcp. in act. sense.

éπι-καμπῆθη, bend, i.e. ποιεῖθα, form at an angle, i.e., with the wings thrown forward.

éπι-κάυμα, wheel, rally. [See also éπι-καμπῆθη.]

éπι-κείμαι, set upon, attack.

éπι-κηρουκέω, communicate by heralds.

éπι-κοιμέω, compliment.

éπι-κρατέω, gain mastery of; hold.

éπι-κρύπτω, conceal.

éπι-λαμβάνω, intr., reach.

éπι-λέγωμαι, choose, think over, read over.

éπι-λειπέω, fail (w. acc.).

éπι-μιμνήσκω, remind.

éπι-νοεω, have in mind, intend.

éπι-προσθεν, in front.

éπι-σημαίνω, signify.

éπι-στολή, letter.

éπι-στρέφω, turn; mid., turn.

éπι-στροφή, eddy.

éπι-τάττω, enjoin.

éπι-τήθεϊος, necessary; ó éπ., friend (cp. necessarius); τὰ éπιτήθεια, provisions.

éπι-τίθημι, in mid., set upon, attack.

éπι-τρέπω, commit, entrust.

éπι-φέρομαι (ἐπενέχθης, 1 aor. ptep. passive), am carried along.

éπι-φέρω, carry to.

éπι-φλέγω, inflame, burn.

éπι-φορέω, carry to.

éπι-χείρω, try, attempt, attack (w. dat.).

éπι-χείρησις, f., attempt, attack.

éπι-χώριοι, native.

éπι-κατακόριοι, seven thousand.

éπι-κατακόριος, seven hundred.

éπι-κόσμος, called after (w. gen.), [ἀνω = name].

éπι-αφέλεω, help.

éπώ, desire, love.

éργάζομαι, work, espec. in fields.

éργάτης, fitter.

éργον, work, action, exploit; Τροικών ἔργον, the affair of Troy.

éρημία, desolation, want of.

éρημος, deserted, without inhabitant; ἡ ἔρημος, τὰ ἔρημα = the desert.

Εἰρκός, of enclosures, epith. of presiding deity of a house.

éρυμα, ask.

έρωμανων, adv., boldly, courageously [ἀπόντες].

έρως, ὦρως, m., love, desire.

ἐσ. See εἰς.

έσθης, ἔσθης, f., raiment, clothes.

ἐσπέρα, evening.

ἐστε, until.

ἐστιπρος, ὀποίος, m., pey at end of pole.

ἐταῖρος, friend, companion; οἱ ἐταῖροι, horse-guards.

ἐτέρως, other, one of two; ἐπὶ θάτερα, in another direction.

ἐτύ, still, yet.

ἐτος, n., year.

εὔ-δαίμων, εὐφρά, wealthy, happy [cp. beatus].

εὔδος, adv., straightway; ἐς εὔδος, straight up: εἰς τὸν εὐδοκόν, at present time.

εὔ-κληρος, renowned.

εὐμαράσει, easily.

εὐνή, bed, couch.

εὐνοοῦ, good-will, kindly disposition.

εὐνοοχος, chamberlain, eunuch [εὐνή, ἵκατο].

εὐ-οίμοσ, fragrant.

εὐπετης, easy.

εὐ-πραγμα, good fortune, prosperity.

εὐπρίσκαω, find, discover; aor., εὑρω.

εὑρός, n., breadth.

εὐ-χαρία, open expanse of ground.

εὐρωστός, strong.

εὐ-ώνυμος, with a good name, left [to avoid an ill-omened name for what was unlucky].

ἐφ-επομαι, follow on.

ἐφη, said he. See φημι.

ἐφ-ημερίς, i.e. f., diary.

ἐφ-ἐπη, let loose upon, send; aor., ἐφῆκα.

ἐφ-ώστημα, place upon; ἐπέστημ, I stood upon, was present at.

ἐφθιν. See φθινο.

ἐφ-οδος, f., invasion, attack, assault.

ἐφ-ομαρτέω, follow on.

ἐφ-ορίσθη, be at anchor.

ἐφ-θρός, hostile.

ἐχω, have, hold, stop; with adv. = εἴμι, κακός εἴχω, be wronell, in evil case; ὦς εἴχω, as we are; mid. (w. gen.), be close to; (w. dat.), be possessed by; w. ptep. go on doing. Phrases, ὦς εἴχω τάχος, as fast as they could.

ἐωθεθ, early, in the morning.

ἐως, so long as, until.

Z.

ζέγνυμι, bind, bridge over, build.

ζέγγος, n., team.
Vocabulary.

Greek:  ἤν, inf. of ἔω, live.
Ζέως, Διὸς, or Ζηνός, Zeus (= Jove).
ἴητω, seek.
ἴγνυν, yoke.

H.

ἡ, or; with comparatives, than.
ἦγεταύοις, (w. gen.), command; (w. dat.), be guide to, conduct.
ἠγεμόνων, ón, m., leader, guide.
ἦγεμονία, leadership, headship.
ἥδη, already, now.
ἥδομαι, am pleased with.
ἥδος, eis, ú [ rápον, ἡ δοστος], sweet, pleasant.
ἥδος, n., haunt [conn. with ἔδω, habit].
ἥκω, am come.
ἥλικα, age.
ἥλιον, day.
ἥλθον, aor. of ἥρχομαι.
ὕμερος, 2 domesticated, garden (of plants).
ὕμι-όνος, male.
ὕμνος, eis, v, half.
ὕν = ἄιν.
ἥρως, ἰμ. See ἕρα.

Θ.

θαλάττα, sea.
θαλασσο-κρατέω, be master of the sea.
θάνατος, death; τὰν ἐπι θανάτῳ ἀπάγω, to lead off to execution.

I.

ιάτρική (sc., τέχνη), healing art.
ιατρός, doctor, physician.
ἰδίος, 3 one’s own, private: τὰ ἰδία.
ἰδρύω, set up, build, establish, found.
ἰδρων, ptc. aor. of ἱδρύω.
ἰδρευα, priestess.
ἰερέως, priest.
ἰερός, 3 holy, ὑ ἱερὸ, temple; ὑ ἱερά, sacrifices.
ἰμα, send forth; ἰμα ὕφηρ, utter a sound.
ἰκανός, sufficient, adequate, several.
ἰκετεύω, be a suppliant.
ἰκετήριος, of a suppliant.
ἰκτήριος, commander of an ἑκάτηριος, troop of cavalry.
ἰλιγγος, vertigo.
ἰνα, (w. conj. and opt.), in order that, so that.
ἰνα-περ, where, whether.
ἰππεύς, rider; in plur. cavalry.
ἰππαρχία, regiment of cavalry.
ἰππικός, of horses, (epith. of ἀγαν.), ἵππικος, cavalry.
ἰππο-μαχία, cavalry engagement.
ἰππό-κομος, with horse hair.
ἰππός, horse; fem. ἱππος, cavalry.
ἰππο-τοξότης, mounted bowman.
ἰσότης, τιτρος, f., equality.
ἰσος, 3 equal.
ἰστήμη, set, place, halt (act.) [what are intrans. parts?].
ἰσχυρίζομαι, insist, assert strongly.
ἰσχυρός, strong.
ἰχνος, n., track, footprint.
Vocabulary.

καρπός, ending, strong, brisk.
κάρφος, hay.
κάτα, (w. gen.), down from; down upon, κατά τῆς άδου, along the route; w. acc. by, opposite to, at, in, according to; κατ’ ἐμπορίαν, for the traffic; καθι ὡδώφη, for pleasure.
κατα-κέλλη, cast down, disparage.
κατα-δώ, bind fast.
κατα-δρομή, incursion, invasion.
κατα-κύρου, go to coast, come to land.
κατα-καίνω, slay.
κατα-κοινίσαω, shoot at, shoot down.
κατα-κόπτω, cut down.
κατα-λαμβάνω, to seize upon, overtake.
κατα-λέπω, leave behind.
κατα-λύω, finish.
κατα-μακάνω, learn, ascertain.
κατα-νέω, distribute.
κατα-ντικρύ, right opposite.
κατα-πατέω, tread down.
κατα-παύω, make to cease.
κατα-πάτησα, catapult.
κατα-πήγνυμι, root firmly.
κατα-πέδαω, leap down, leap off.
κατα-πέταω, fall down; aor., -έπετο, pl., πέπτωκα.
κατα-πλέω, sail down stream.
κατα-πλέως, quite full.
κατα-πράττω, accomplish, gain.
κατα-ρράπτω, sev., devise.
κατα-ρράπτω, dash down, break.
κατα-σέλω, shake down; wave.
κατα-σκάπτω, dig down, raze.
κατα-σκευή, baggage.
κατα-σπάω, drag down.
κατα-στρατοπεδεύω (ομαί), encamp.
κατα-τετράσκο, wound severely.
κατα-φανής, in sight, conspicuous.
κατα-φεύγω, fly for refuge.
κάτα-εμπόρια, descend, go down.
κάτα-ήχω, hold fast, grasp; intr., extend, hold good, obtain, ὅ λόγος κατέχει.
κατα-οικέω, inhabit.
κατα-όπιν, behind, from behind.
κάτα-οχής, overpowered.
κάτω, below.
κάτωθι, from below.
καθίμι, burning heat.
κείμαι, lie, be situated.
κεκαμένοις (ptcp. perf. pass. of καλέω), burning, red hot.
κελέω, order, command.
κέρας (gen., ἄτο, os), n., horn; (of an army), wing, flank; ἐπι κέρας, in column; κατά κέρας, i. 6, 18, in flank. (See iii. 7. 25 n.)
κεφαλή, head.
κήρυγμα, n., proclamation.
κήρυξ, úkos, herald.
κυνείων, be in danger.
κύνδυνος, danger.
κυνεω, move, stir; κ. τό στρατό-, πεδω, strike camp.
κύνηγος, f., movement, moving, disturbance.
κλέπτο, steal; use stratagem.
κλέμαξ, άκος, m., ladder.
κλῆψις, bed.
κλόους, collar, kind of pillory (κλείω).
κλόων, άνω, m., wave, billow.
κνέφας, ές, n., darkness, dusk.
κοίλος, hollow; (of a wave), high, swelling.
κοινός, common; τό κοινόν, the community; adv., κοινή, τά κοίνα δέσματα, the general determination.
κολακεία, flattery.
κολακεύω, flatter.
κομίζω, bring, carry.
κοπτής, ὄδος, f., axe.
κόπτω, cut, hew.
κόραξ, άκος, m., raven.
κορυφή, top, crest.
κοσμέω, arrange, put in order, marshal.
κόσμος, order, honour.
κούφος, light, swift.
κρανείνος, of cornel wood.
κρανεία, cornel tree.
κράνος, n., helmet.
κρατέω, become master of (w. gen.).
κράτηρ, ἄρος, o., bowl.
κράτιστος, best, noblest, finest; superl. of ἀγαθός.
κράτος, n., might, vigour; ἅ να (κατά) κράτος, with all one’s power; with αἰρεῖν, take by storm.
κρέας, n., flesh.
κρείττων, άνας, comp. of ἀγαθός.
κρημνός, sheer descent, crag.
κρημνόδως, steep.
κρίσις, f., decision.
κροίω, in mid. (of ships), πρόκειναι, move astern.
κρύπτω, hide, conceal.
κτήω, found, establish.
κτύπος, noise, din.
κυβερνάω, steer, pilot.
κυβερνήτης, pilot, steersman.
κύκλος, circle, circuit.
κυκλώ, surround.
κύκλωσις, f., encircling, surrounding.
κυκλις, ikos, f., beaker, cup.
κύμα, ἄτο, n., tide, wave.
κυμαίνω, swell, protrude, budge.
κυλώ, hinder.
κυμάζω, reveal [κώμος].
κύμη, village.
κύπη, oar.

Λ.
λάβρος, violent.
λαβών, aor. ptcp. of λαμβάνω.
λάβρα, secretly.
### Vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>λάβανεν</td>
<td>take, get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λάβομαι</td>
<td>receive, get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰπομα</td>
<td>say, speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λαμμάσ</td>
<td>lamp; torch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λαμμάτις</td>
<td>brilliant, splendid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λαμμάτις</td>
<td>brilliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λαμμάνω</td>
<td>escape notice (w. acc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λάμπω</td>
<td>shine, be bright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λάμπος</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λάμπος</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μάλα</td>
<td>(màllon, málsta), very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μάλα</td>
<td>(with numbers), about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μαντέλω</td>
<td>learn, aor., εμαθω</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μαντεῖον</td>
<td>oracle, seat of an oracle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μαστίγω</td>
<td>scourge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μαστός</td>
<td>breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μάχη</td>
<td>fight, battle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μάχη</td>
<td>warlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μάχαιρα</td>
<td>fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεγαλο-πρόσωπος</td>
<td>magnificently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεγας</td>
<td>great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεγάλος</td>
<td>great, large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μέγας</td>
<td>widely (comp. μεγας, superl. μέγας)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεγεθος</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεγεθος</td>
<td>comp. adv. of μεγας</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μέλλω</td>
<td>delay; mean to do, be about to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μέν</td>
<td>particle, answered by δέ, on the one hand...on the other [need not as a rule be translated]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μένος</td>
<td>however</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μένο</td>
<td>remain, abide, wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μένος</td>
<td>part, division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεσημβρία</td>
<td>midday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεσημβρία</td>
<td>in gen., at midday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεσόγαια</td>
<td>the interior</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>μένος</td>
<td>in the middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετά</td>
<td>w. gen., with; w. acc., after (of place and time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μέτα</td>
<td>χεῖρας εἴχεν, to hold in the hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετα-βώλλομαι</td>
<td>change, change one's mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετα-άγω</td>
<td>transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετα-γιγνώσκω</td>
<td>change one's intention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετα-χορέω</td>
<td>migrate, withdraw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετά-ευμ</td>
<td>go to look for, go after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μεταφέρομαι</td>
<td>raise up, get into deep water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μετώπος</td>
<td>forehead, front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μη</td>
<td>not (prohibitive); in final sentences after ἢν, ὠς, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μῆν</td>
<td>all the land that was not sacred; μή οὐ w. inf. = quin, quamnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μῆν</td>
<td>in truth, really; οὐ μή, not however, καί μή καί, yes, and more than this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μήν</td>
<td>mēn, mēn, m., month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μῆνος</td>
<td>mēn, mēn, m., month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μηνιος</td>
<td>mēnios, f., month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μηρός</td>
<td>thigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μητήρ</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μηχανή</td>
<td>machine (mil. engine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μηχανή</td>
<td>small, little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μισθός</td>
<td>pay, hire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μισθο-φόρος</td>
<td>a mercenary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μισθο-φόρος</td>
<td>be a mercenary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μισθοφόρος</td>
<td>hired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μνημα</td>
<td>memorial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μνημεῖον</td>
<td>memorial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μνήμη</td>
<td>remembrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μόνος</td>
<td>alone, only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μόνος</td>
<td>fable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μυρίος</td>
<td>myriad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μύριοι</td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>νάρδος</td>
<td>nard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νάττα</td>
<td>press close together, heap up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ναῦς</td>
<td>ναῦς, f., ship; ν. μάκρα, man-of-war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ναυ-σταθμός</td>
<td>station for ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ναύτης</td>
<td>sailor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ναυτικός</td>
<td>naval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νεκρός</td>
<td>corpse, dead body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νέος</td>
<td>νέος, f., new; superl., νέωτερος, youngest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νεος</td>
<td>temple, shrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νεός</td>
<td>dockyard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νεώτερος</td>
<td>revolt, rise in revolt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νεωτερισμός</td>
<td>rising, revolt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νησίς</td>
<td>f., island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νήχος</td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νικάω</td>
<td>conquer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νίκη</td>
<td>victory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νοέω</td>
<td>think, have in one's mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νομάρχης</td>
<td>ruler of a district</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νομίζω</td>
<td>think, consider</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vocabulary.

νόμιμος, lawful, usual; τὰ νόμιμα, customs.

νόμος, law, custom.

νόσος (νόσι), mind, thought; προσέχω τὸν νόσι, attend to.

νοσέω, be sick, be ill.

νόσος, f., illness, sickness.

νότος, south wind.

νυκτός, adv., by night.

νυν, now.

νύξ, νυκτός, f., night.

δύορμα, lament.

δαν, whence.

οἶδα, I know [γὰρ, ἢςθι, εἰδῶ, εἰδεῖν, εἰδέναι, εἰδές].

οἰκάδε, homewards.

οἰκέος, f.; η οἰκεία, native land.

οἰκτία, house.

οἰκίζω, build a house.

οίκος, house, home.

οίκτος, pity.

οίμα, I think.

οἰωγή, lamentation [οἰων].

οἴνος, wine.

οἶος, such as; ὁ ὀίος, able.

οὐσίς, arrow.

οὐχομαι, go away, be gone.

οἰωνίδος, bird of prey, omen.

οικεῖα, shrink from, delay, hesitate.

οίκταις-χάλιον, eight thousand.

οίκτο, eight.

οἶγος, few; adv., ὀἶγον, seldom.

οἶες, whole, entire.

'Ολυμπίας, ὁ ὀίες, f., Olympiads, period of four years (dating from 776 B.C.).

οἱμαλός, level.

οἵμπος, shower, rain.

οἵμπος, conterminous, neigbouring [ὁπος = boundary].

ὁμοῖς, together, w. dat.

ὁμός, nevertheless.

ὁνομα, n., name.

ὁνομάζω, name.

ὁνοματερία, by name.

ἐγώ, εἰς, ὅ, sharp, quick; (of a river), swift; adv., ὀδος.

ἐγώντης, τάξις, f., quickness.

ὁπό, where.

ὁπόθεν, from behind; w. gen., behind one.

ὁπώρο, behind.

ὁπλίζω, arm.

ὁπότε, w. indic., when; w. opt., whenever.

ὁπού, when.

ὅπως, how (w. ind.), in order that (w. subj. and opt.).

ὁράω, see; nor., εἰδός; impf., εἰδώ.

ὁργή, anger.

ὁμελος, f. and s. hilly, mountainous.

ὁρός, straight: τόπος ὁρός, upright (see note).

ὁρός, put straight, raise up.

ὁρών, boundary.

ὁρμάω, start, urge; in mid., set out, make one's headquarters.

ὁρμάω, be at anchor.

ὁρμή, rush, attack.

ὁρμήζω, bring to anchor.

ὁς, ὁ, ὁ, who (relative); ἐν θε, whilst; as demonstrative, ἦς, i. 7, 47.

ὁσίος, holy.

ὁσός, f. as great as, all; ὦσος, as long as, as much as.

ὁσπέρ, ὁσπέρ, ὁσπέρ, who; ὁσπέρ ὦς, as.

ὁστής, ὅς, ὅτι [gen., ὅτι and ὅτιν], whosoever.

ὁτε, when.

ὁτι, that; ὁτι τάχησα, as fast as possible; ὁτι ἐμ, except.

οὔ, οὖ, ὅχ, not.

οὔ, where.

οὖ, reflexive pron., himself, herself, itself.

οὐδεμάς, by no means.

οὐδέ, and not, not.

οὐδές, οὐδεία, οὐδέρ, no one.

οὐκέτα, no longer.

οὐκοῦν, not therefore.

οὖν, therefore, then.

οὖν, where.

οὖ-περ, not yet.

οὔαρ, heaven.

οὔτε, neither, nor.

οὔτος, οὐτο, τοῦτο, this, that: ταύτης, in this way.

οὔτω, οὖτος, so, thus.

ὁφαλμός, eye.

ὁχῆα, bank (of river).

ὁχυρος, steadfast, firm, sure.

ὁχυρός, make firm.

/dat., vision, sight.

Π.

πάντας, πάντας, πάντας, n., son, daughter, child.

πάντας, πάντας, πάντας, n., disaster, phenomenon.

παύσον, shout victory (παύν).
Vocabulary.

πάλαι, of old, formerly.
παλαίος, old; ἐκ παλαιοῦ, of old time.
πάλιν, again.
παλτός, light spear, javelin.
παν-σπλαχνά, full suit of armour.
παντάπαν, by all means.
πανταχώριν, from all sides.
πάντες, all.
πάντες, from all sides.
παντός, of every sort.
παρά, (1) w. gen., from; ἐκ παρ' Ἀλέξανδρου, Alexander's body-guard.
(2) w. acc., to, past, by, alongside; παρά βάλλεται, along sea shore; παρά μέγα, as a great thing; παρ' ὀδόν, as ought (w. idea of comparison).
παρ-βοθύνω, come to help.
παρ-αγγέλλω, command.
παρ-αγγέλμα, command.
παρ-άγω, to lead along.
παράδεισος, park.
παρ-δέχομαι, receive (from some one).
παρ-δίδωμι, concede, pardon.
παρ-δόω, run past.
παρ-αυτόμαι, deprecate.
παρ-καλέω, call in to help, escort.
παρ-αλλάττω, change, go beyond, pass each other.
παρ-λογισμός, contrary to calculation; τὸ π., strangeness, miscalculation.
παρ-λώ, dismiss.
παράνομα, outrage.
παρα-πλέω, sail by, sail along.
παρα-πλήσιος, near to.
παρα-πορεύομαι, march past.
παρα-πρήγμα, break, breach; παραρρήγησις, ptep. 2 aor. pass.
παρα-σκευάζω, prepare; mtd., make ready.
παρα-σκευή, preparation (esp. military).
παρα-σκηνεύω, encamp beside.
παρα-τάττω, marshal in battle array.
παρα-τείνω, stretch along.
παρ-αυτός, immediately.
παρα-φέρω, bring along.
παρ-έμι, am present; ἐν τῷ παρωνί, in present crisis; τὰ παρώντα, existing means.
παρ-έλκω, drag along, drag aside, divert.
παρ-έχομαι, reach, come to, pass on to.
παρ-ίσχυ, afford, present.
πάρθενος, f., maid, virgin.
παρ-πεπέραω, ride alongside.
παρ-ποτισμός, in mid., bring over.
παρ-όδος, f., road past.
παρ-ονία, drunken excess.
παρ-οξυώ, annoy, provoke.
πάς, πᾶσα, πᾶ, all.
πάσα, all.
πατέω, tread.
πατήρ, πατός, father.
πάτριος, of one's own land, native.
παιδω, make to cease; mid., cease from (w. gen. or participle).
πέθη, fatter.
πείδροω, plain.
πεῖδρο, infantry engagement.
πεῖδρο, on foot; adv., πεῖδρο; o. πεῖδρο, infantry.
πείδρω, persuade; mtd. (w. dat.), obey.
πειράμα, attempt, try.
πείραμα, fut. of (1) πάσχω; (2) πέθωμαι.
πελάγος, sea.
πελάγος, bring near; intr., approach.
πέμπω, send.
πεμπτός, fifth.
πένης, ποτος, poor.
πένθος, grief.
πεντάκης-χλωρος, five thousand.
πεντακόσιος, five hundred.
πέντε, five.
πέντε καλ δέκα, fifteen.
πεντάπηρης (sc. ναῦς), f., ship with five banks of oars.
πέραν, across (w. gen.).
περάω, cross.
περί, w. gen., about, concerning; w. acc., about, surrounding; o. περί τινα, one's attendants.
περί-άγω, bring round; march round (intr.).
περί-βάλλω, cast round.
περί-εμοι, go round.
περί-εμοι, be round, survive.
περί-εργο, close round.
περί-έφθασι, come round, go round.
περί-ιππεύω, ride round.
περί-λατσμα, place round; intr., stand round; come round, happen.
περί-οικος, living near.
περί-οράω, overlook.
περί-πλέω, sail round.
περί-πτερω, full of soul.
περίεξ, round about.
περί-στρέφω, turn round.
Περσιστή, in Persian.
πέτρα, rock.
πηγή, fountain.
πηλός, mud.
πηπατήστω, hardening.
πηχυς, eus, m., cubit.
πίδακ, äkos, f., fountain, spring.
πίεζω, press, oppress.
πιθανός, persusasive, obedient; comp., πιθανότερος.
πίνω, drink; fut., πίσαμαι; pf., πίπτωκα.
πίπτω, fall; aor., πίπτων; fut., πίπτωμαι.
πιστεύω, trust; pass., be trusted.
πιστός, faithful, credible.
Vocabulary.

πλάγιος,3 across, slantwise, in flank; τὰ πλάγια, flanks of an enemy.
πλανάμαι, wander.
πλέον, sail.
πλέον, πλείστος. See πολύς.
πλέον-εκτέω, gain advantage.
πλήγη, blow.
πλῆθος, n., number, mob, majority.
πλημμελέω, do wrong; pass., be maltreated.
πλήν, except (w. gen.).
πλήρης, full.
πλησίον, near (w. gen.).
πλοῖον, vessel.
πλοῖος, sailing, voyage.
πνεύω, blow.
πνεύμα, breath, wind.
πόθος, desire.
ποιεώ, make; in mid., account, regard.
ποιτίζω, poet.
ποιτός,3 made, manufactured.
πολεμέω, be at war (w. dat., or πρὸς and acc.).
πολέμιος,3 hostile; οἱ π., the enemy.
πολέμος, war.
πολλορκέω, besiege.
πολλορκία, siege.
πόλις, f., city, state.
πολιτεύω, be a citizen, have a government.
πολλαχῇ, in many ways, often.
πολύς, πολλῆ, πολύ, much, many; οἱ πολλοί, the mob, majority; ἐκ πολλῶν, for a long time; πολύ, far; ἐπὶ πολὺ, for long.
πονέω, labour, strain (as of a ship); τὸ πονοῦμεν, the part in trouble.
πόνος, toil, labour, distress.
πορεία, march.
πορεύομαι, march, set out (deponent).
πόρος, crossing, passage; stream.
πόρρω, further.
ποταμός, river.
ποτε (enclitic), ever, at any time.
πότερον... ἢ, whether...or.
πότος, drinking-bout.
πού, somewhere, anywhere.
ποῦς, ποῦς, m., foot; ἐπὶ ποῦς, backwards (or, slowly).
πράγμα, undertaking, matter; τ. παρέχω, give trouble.
πράττω, do, accomplish.
πρέπει, it is seemly, becoming.
πρεσβεία, embassy.
πρεσβεύω, be proud of, make much of, be an ambassador (also in middle).
πρέσβυς, old man (οἱ πρεσβύτατοι); in plur., πρεσβεῖος, ambassadors.
πρὶν, (freq. with inf.), before.
πρό, before (of time or place), in front of.
προ-ἀγγέλλω, announce beforehand.
προ-άγω, lead forward; intr., advance.
πρό-δρομος, reconnoitring party.
πρό-δοσία, betrayal, surrender.
πρό-ειμι, go before, advance [εἰμί].
προ-ε-βάλλω, insert before; attack first.
πρό-έχομαι, advance.
πρό-θύμος,3 eager, desirous.
προ-πεπείω, ride before.
προ-σκοτάω, put forward, hold out; mid., make a pretext.
προ-καλέω, invite, summon.
προ-πέτομαι, fly before.
πρός, w. gen., by, on the side of, to advantage of; πρὸς θύμοις, to his mind; with dat., near to, at, besides; with acc., to, against; at, πρὸς ἐπιστολήν.
προσ-άγω, lead to, lead against; intr. (of an army).
προσ-απτώ, fasten to; mid. reach.
προσ-βαίνω, f., advance against.
προσ-βολή, attack.
προσ-γενομαι, join, be added to, happen.
προσ-δοκάω, wait for, expect.
προσ-έχομαι, come to, come against, approach.
προσ-έχω (ναίτω), bring to a ship; apply; intr., approach.
προσ-ήμι, mid., admit.
προσ-κατ-οικίζω, occupy in addition, found besides.
προσ-λαμβάνω, take besides.
προσ-μάχομαι, fight against.
προσ-μένω, wait, abide.
προσ-μίνυμι, assail, come to close quarters; aor., προσέμεξ.
προσ-φέρω, bring to; mid., attack.
προσ-χειρέω, approach, accede.
προσ-χειρός,3 neighbouring.
πρόσω, forwards, far; comp., προσωπέρω.
πρόσωπον, face.
προ-τάττω, marshal in front.
προ-τείνω, offer.
προτεραιός,3 τ. ἡμέρα, day before.
προ-φυλακή, outpost.
προ-χίω, pour forth; προχύβεις, 1 aor. ptcp. pass.
προ-χόρευν, go forward; go well, succeed, i. 7, 61.
πρύμνα, stern of ship.
πρώπα, prow.
πρῶτος,3 first; adv., πρῶτον and πρῶτα (πρῶ). 
πτηνός,3 winged.
πτέλος, f., tub, basin, sarco_phague.
πτυκνος,3 thick.
πτυκνότης, τύτος, f., thickness.
πύλη, gate.
πυθάνομαι, inquire, ascertain; aor., ἐπιθύμησω.
πύρ, πύρος, n., fire.
πύργος, tower.
Vocabulary.

πυρέτος, be in a fever.
πώμα, n., lid.
πώποτε, ever yet.
πως, somehow.

Π.
ράξω, find relief, recover.
ρέμα, n., stream.
ρέω, flow; fut., ρέωσαν.
ρίζα, root.
ρίπτω (ρίπτω), cast, throw.
ρόος (ροῦς), stream.
ρομός, pole.
ρυτήρ, ῥος, m., bridle.
ρωμή, strength.

Σ.
σάλπνυς, γγος, f., trumpet.
σάρισα, long spear.
σαρυσαφός, spearman.
σατράπης, satrap.
σέλας, aor., n., lightning.
σημαίνω, give indication, command.
σημείων, sign; outline, iii. 1, 12.
σιγή, silence; σιγή (adv.), in silence.
σιδήρος (σιδηροῦς), of iron.
σινδόν, ῥώς, f., linen.
σιτεόμαι, feed, have provision.
σίτος, provision, corn.
σίτια, provisions.
σκάφος, n., skiff, boat.
σκευή, baggage.
σκευοφόρα, n. plur., beasts of burden.
σκηνέω, encamp.
σκηνή, tent, awning.
σκοπός, spy, watch.
σκυρός 3 = μικρός.
σμύρνα, myrrh.
σοβαρός, violent; adv., ἠς.
σπαρμός, camp.
σπένθε, pour libation; aor., ἐπεσάμαν.
στουδή, zeal, diligence; στουδή (adv.), eagerly.
στάδιον [plur., στάδιον], stade, furlong.
σταθμός, station, stage.
στάσις, f., position; dissension, riot, faction.
στέλλω, send; mid., start (on expedition); 2 aor. pass., ἔστατον.
στενός, narrow; τὰ στενὰ, straits.
στέρνον, breast.
στεφανῶν, crown.
στήθος, n., chest.
στήφος, n., crowd.
στόα, portico, colonnade.
στόλη, equipment, robe.
στόλος, expedition.
στόμα, n., mouth.
στρατεύω (-ομαί), go an expedition.
στρατεύμα, n., host, army.
στρατηγία, generalship.

στρατηγία, iōs, f., admiral's ship.
στρατηγός, general.
στρατά, army.
στρατιώτης, soldier.
στρατόπεδον, camp.
στρατόπεδος (-ομαί), encamp.
στρατός, army.
στρέφω, turn; intr. = middle, wheel, turn.
στρογγυλός, round; s. πλοῖον, merchant ship.
στυγέω, hate, loathe.
συγ-γενής, akin.
συγ-γενώςκο, be conscious of.
συγ-γνώμη, pardon.
συγ-γράφω, compile, chronicle.
συγ-καλέω, ἔσσω, call together.
συγ-καίμω, suffer with, work with.
συγ-κυνωνεύω, share danger.
συγ-κλέω, shut up.
συγ-κλείσις, f., confinement.
συγ-κοριζώ, bring together.
συγ-κόπτω, cut up.
συγ-χωρέω, yield, give up.
συλάω, spoil, rob, plunder.
συλλαβάνω, seize.
συλ-λέγω, collect.
σύλλογος, assembly, muster.
συμ-βάλλω, impers. it happens.
συμ-βάλλω, throw together, compare; (of water) flow together.
συμ-βασίς, f., agreement.
συμ-βολή, conjunction of streams.

συμ-βουλέω, determine; mid., take counsel.
σύμ-μαχος, ally.
σύμ-πας, πας, πα, all.
συμ-πέτυχω, hasten together.
συμ-φέυγω, fly together.
συμ-φωνέω, agree.
συμ-φορος, 2 conducive, fit.
συν, with (w. dat.).
συν-άγω, bring together, collect.
συν-άληω, collect.
συν-ασπίζω, close shields.
συν-αμί, associate with.
συν-ει-πίπτω, enter with anybody.
συν-επι-καλέω, call in with.
συν-επι-λαμβάνω, intr., happen.
συν-έπομαι, follow with.
συν-έρχομαι, come with.
συν-εχθής, continuous, constant.
συν-έχω, grasp tight; mid., be closely packed, be occupied with.
συν-δήμα, agreement, covenant.
συν-ιστήμη, set together; in intrans. tenses, was, was gathered, was established.
συν-ντεσώ, nod assent, agree with.
συν-ουκίζω, occupy with.
συν-τάτω, marshal with.
συν-τελέω, complete, contribute; with eis, belong to a class.
συν-τέμνω, cut up, cut short.
συν-τονος, 2 strained; forced (of a march).
Vocabulary.

συν-τρίβω, rub together; mid., rub against one another.

Συνγρησάω, noise made by elephants, trumpeting.

Συν-πάπτω, sew together.

Σφάζω (σφάττω), sacrifice, slaughter.

Σφαλλός, dangerous, ominous, Σφάλμα, failure.

Σφάς, acc. plur. of οὖ.

Σφενδονάω, sting.

Σφενδονίτης, stinger.

Σφέτερος, their own, theirs.

Σφυς, dat. plur. of οὖ.

Σφόδρα, very.

Σφών, gen. plur. of οὖ.

Σχέδων, near; σ. τί, about, almost.

Σχίζω, split, separate.

Σχολαίος, leisurely; adv. comp., σχολαιτέρος.

Σώμα, save, rescue, preserve.

Σώμα, n., body.

Σωματοφύλαξ, akos, body-guard.

Σωσί, safe, sound.

Τ.

Ταλαιπωρέω, be weary, be in distress.

Ταλαιπωρίσις, distress.

Ταλαιπωρία, distress.

Τάλαντον, talent (= about £240).

Ταράχως, officer commanding a τάξις.

Τάξις, f., rank, order, division; εν τάξει, in turn.

Ταπεινώσται, humbly.

Ταραττω, disturb, harass.

Ταραχή, disturbance, confusion.

Ταύρος, bull.

Ταφή, burial.

Τάφρος, f., ditch, trench.

Τάχος, n., swiftness, rapidity.

Ταχυ-ναύτεω, sail fast.

Ταχύς, εὶα, υ', swift.

Τε, and; τε... καί, both... and.

Τεχνητό, wall, make secure.

Τεκμαρομαί, know by proof.

Τελευτάω, end; sc., δολο, die.

Τέλος, n., end; adv., in the end, at last.

Τέμενος, n., sacred enclosure.

Τέμυρο, cut, divide.

Τεναγνώσης, marvishy.

Τέσσαρες, a, four.

Τέτρακις-μείριον, 40,000 (fifteen thousand).

Τετρακόσιον, 4,000 (four hundred).

Τέως, for a while.

Τιάρα, turban, tiara.

Τιμή, honour, value, price.

Τίμω, pay, revenge; fut., τίμω.

Τίς, τί, who?

Τίς, τι, any one.

Τιτρόσκω, wound.

Τίμη, n., piece.

Τοιόσος, τοιάδε, τοίωδε, of the following kind.

Τοιμάω, venture, be bold.

Τοιμαία, n., exploit.

Τοιχάρχης, officer of archers.

Τόξον, n., arrow.

Τόξων, bow.

Τοτάκω, conjecture.

Τότος, place.

Τοσούτος, αύτην, οὕτα, so great.

Τοσόδοκε, ἥν, ὤνδε, so great, so little.

Τότε, then; τότε δέ, then indeed.

Τραφή, n., wound.

Τραυματίας, a wounded man.

Τραυματίζω, wound.

Τραχύς, εἰα, υ', harsh, rough.

Τρεῖς, τρία, three.

Τρέπω, turn, put to flight.

Τριάκοντα, thirty.

Τριακοντάριος, f., with 30 oars.

Τριακόσιοι, 3,000 (three hundred).

Τρίβη, delay.

Τρίβης, f., triveme.

Τρίς, three times.

Τρισ-μύριοι, 3,000 (three thousand).

Τρισ-χλόοι, 3,000 (three thousand).

Τρίτος, 3rd.

Τριχή, in three parts.

Τριπτή, change.

Τυχή, meet with (w. gen.); happen (w. ptcl.).

Τύλος, knot, knob.

Υ.

Υβρίζω, outrage, insult.

Υβρις, f., violence, outrage.

Υδρα, n., water.

Υός, son.

Υλη, wood.

Υλώδης, wooded.

Υπ-άγω, bring under; intr., move slowly, withdraw.

Υπ-αρχής, vicegerent.

Υπάρχω, am; Υπάρχει, it is possible.

Υπαισπής, hypaspist; -ται, division of Macedonian army.

Υπ-εναντίος, opposite, opposed to.

Υπέρ, w. gen., about, above, on behalf of; w. acc., beyond, in excess of.

Υπέρ-βάλλω, throw beyond, exceed.

Υπέρ-βέλος, above (on the right), high up.

Υπέρ-ογκος, overweening.

Υπέρ-υψήλος, very high.

Υπέρ-φαλαγγώ, outflank.

Υπέκμος, obedient to, in subjection.

Υπό, w. gen., by (of the instrument, ὑπὸ καμάρον); w. acc., about (ep. sub).

Υποζύγων, beast of burden.

Υπο-λείπω, leave behind.

Υπο-τοπέω, suspect.

Υπο-φαίνω, show. ὑπο-φαίνεις, it was beginning to dawn.

Υπο-φάνω, anticipate.

Υπερταίος, -αί ἡμέρα, day after.
Φ.

Φαίνω, show; mid., appear.

Φάλαγξ, γγος, f., phalanx.

Φανερός, clear, obvious.

Φάραγγα, γγος, f., ravine.

Φάρμακον, drug, poison.

Φάσκω, say, command.

Φιάδομαι, spare (w. gen.).

Φέρω, carry, bring; χαλεπώς φης, take amiss; οὖν φέρετο, road leads; mid., be borne along, charge.

Φεύγω, escape, fly.

Φθάνω, anticipate, come before one, w. ptep. or inf. [2 aor., ἐφην].

Φθείρω, destroy, corrupt.

Φθονέω, grudge [dat. of person, gen. of thing].

Φθορός, destruction, ruin.

Φίλη, drinking-cup, or bowl.

Φιλανθρωπός, friendly, kind, humane.

Φιλέω, love, greet, kiss, be accustomed.

Φίλιος, friendly.

Φίλος, dear; as subst., friend.

Φιλοτιμία, ambition.

Φίλος, bark (of a tree).

Φιλός, γιός, f., flame.

Φοβερός, fearful, timorous; causing fear.

Φοβέω, alarm; mid., be afraid.

Φόβος, fear.

Χ.

Χαίρω, rejoice, be glad; χαίρειν λέγω, say farewell.

Χαλεπός, difficult, serious; adv., -πός.

Χάλκεος (ovis), of bronze.

Χάραβα, mountain torrent, ravine.

Χάραξ, ἀκος, m., palisade; entrenchment.

Χαρίζωμαι, gratify, do a favour.

Χάρις, ἴνος, f., favour, thanks.

Χαριστήροις, thank-offering.

Χειμάρρως, winter torrent.

Χειμῶν, ἵνος, m., winter.

Ψ.

Ψάμμος, f., sand.

Ψαμμάδης, sandy.

Ψεύδω, deceive; ψεύδομαι, am deceived, tell lies.

Ψιλός, stripped, bare; oι ψιλοί, light-armed troops.

Ψιχομαι, grow cold.

Ψυχρός, cold.

Ω.

☊, thrust, push.

Οὐ, οὔτα, ὧ, pres. participle of ἐμεν.

Ομος, shoulder.

Οῆ, care, regard.

Οῆ, hour, proper time; ἐοῆ γάμου, time for marriage.

Ὁς, as, that, where; ὁς τάχιστα, as soon as possible; with fut. tpt., in order to; ὣς, i. 3. 19; = εἰς, of persons.

Ὅς, thus.

Ὅσοι, likewise.

Ὅς, and so (w. ind.); so that (w. inf.).

Ὄφελεα, advantage, succour, relieving party.
Vocabulary.

'Αμενία, Armenia.
'Αρμόδιος, companion of Aristoteleion in the liberation of Athens.
'Αρταξέρξης, royal name (assumed by Bessus).
'Ασία, Asia.
'Ασσυρία, Assyria.
'Ατανασία, between the Tigris and Gorduean mountains.
'Αττική, Attica.
'Αχαιοί, people of Achaia.

Βασιλικός, Babylon.
Βάκτρα, chief town of Bactriana.
Βαρσανάθης, murderer of Dareius.
Βαρσίνη, daughter of Dareius, married to Alexander.
Βάτις, eunuch, who held Gaza.
Βήσσος, satrap of Bactriana, proclaimed king of Persia on death of Dareius, put to death by Alexander.
Βοιωτία, Boeotia.

'Εκβάτανα, n. plur., capital of Media.
'Ελαιόις, οὖντος, on the Thracian Chersonese.
'Ελευθερά, town in Boeotia.
'Ελλάς, ἀδός, f., Greece.
'Ελλήνες, Greeks.
'Ελλησπόντος, Hellespont.
'Ενυδάλλος, name of Ares (Mars).
'Εορδαία, district of Macedonia.
'Εὐρώπη, Europe.
'Εὔφρατης, Euphrates.
'Εφέσος, f., Ephesus.

'Ασρα-σταμός, town in Hyrcania.
'Δαρέας, king of Persia.
'Αθήνα, f., Athens.
'Αθηνάιοι, Athenians; or Αθηναίοι, the Athenians.

'Αμμων, name of Zeus, whose oracle was in the African deserts.
'Αμών, in command of the Theban Kadmeia.
(2) General in command with Perdiccas at the siege of Thebes.
(3) General at battle of Granicus.
(4) Son of Antiochus, who deserted to Dareius.
'Αντίπατρος, Antipater, left in command of Macedonia.
'Αράβες, Arabians.
'Αρβηλα, n. plur. Arbela, in Assyria; close to the scene of Alexander's victory over Dareius. See Caramalia.
'Αρεία, Herat.
'Αριστοφαλάνης, satrap in command at the Persian gates.
'Αριστοφόλους, member of Alexander's staff and his biographer.
'Αριστοκράτοις, liberator of Athens from tyranny of Pisistratidae.

'Γάγγης, the Ganges.
'Γαδραστα, place between the Indus and Carmania.

'Γανγάμπηλα, neut. plur., in Assyria, scene of Alexander's great victory over Dareius.
'Γάζα, city in Palestine which stoutly resisted Alexander.
'Γόριος, Gordium in Phrygia.
'Γόρδιος, Phrygian labourer, afterwards king.
'Γορνάκα (ἡρ), mountains in Armenia.
'Γράνικος, river of Mysia, scene of Alexander's victory over Dareius.

'Αγκράντας, Corinthian, who gave a spear to Alexander when his own was broken at Granicus.
Vocabulary.

Hρακλείον, temple of Hercules.
Hρακλής, Hercules.
Θάψακος, f., on the Euphrates, borders of Syria.
Θεσσαλία, Thessaly.
Θηβαί, Thebes; adj., Θηβαῖος.
Θράκη, Thrace.

Iαζάρτης, river of Asia, used by Arrian to indicate the Tanais (Don).
Ιλιας, ὄς, of Ilium.
Ιλιόν, Ilium, Troy.
Ιλλυριοί, Illyrians.
Ινδός, the Indus.
Ινδοί, Indians.
Ισις, ὄς, f., Isis, Egyptian goddess.
Ισος, in Cilicia.
Ιστρος, Danube.

Καδμεία, citadel of Thebes.
Καθάιος, an Indian tribe on the Hyphasis.
Κάνουβος, on west branch of Nile.
Καρία, district of Asia Minor.
Καρμανία, (Kerman), district extending to Persian Gulf.
Κάσπια πέλαται, a pass, N. of Media.
Κάστορ, ὁπος, Castor, twin brother of Pollux.
Κάύκασος, name given to the Paropamisian chain.

Kλάτος, saves Alexander's life at Granicus; Λάργας at Arbel; murdered by Alexander in a passion.
Κράτερος, commands left wing of infantry at Arbel; present at siege of Cyropolis.
Κρής, ἤρως, Cretan.
Κύδνος, river flowing through Tarsus in Cilicia.
Κύτρος, f., island in Mediterranean.
Κυρούπολις, in Sogdiana; at siege of it Alexander nearly lost his life.
Κωφήν, ἤρως, [Caulus], tributary of the Indus.

Δακέδαιμονις, Lacedaemonians.
Δέωνατος, one of Alexander's ἑταῖροι, his messenger to wife of Dareius.
Διβάτι, Libya (Africa).

Μαξαῖος, keeps bridge over the Euphrates.
Μακεδονία, Macedonia.
Μακεδόν, ὄς, Macedonian.
Μαλλιό��, Indian tribe between the Hydrorites and Acesines.
Μαράκανδα, town in Sogdiana.
Μαρία, lake Mareotis in Libya.
Μέμφις, in charge of Halicarnassus, lower Asia, and the Persian navy.
Μέμφις, ὄς, f., town in Egypt, at top of Delta.

Μεσοποταμία, Mesopotamia, between the Tigris and Euphrates.
Μηδιά, Media.
Μήδιος, friend of Alexander with whom he spent his last hours.
Μήδας, ancient king of Phrygia.
Μηδιδάτης, son-in-law of Dareius.
Μήλης, ὄς, Miletus.

Νασαργάννης, murderer of Dareius.
Νάρχος, commands Alexander's navy.
Νεοπτόλεμος, son of Achilles, supposed ancestor of Alexander.
Νηρίς, ὄς, Nereid.
Νύκαια, town founded by Alexander on the Hydaspes, to commemorate victory over Porus.
Νυκάνωρ, son of Parmenio.

Ξέρχης, Xerxes.

Οὐχικτός, in Boeotia.
Οὐνάρτης, king of Sogdiana.
Οὐξίων, Usii, people of Susiana.

Παλαίνες, Paenians, Thracian tribe.
Παλαιστίνα, Palestine.
Παραγώγος, in Libya.
Παραπαμισάδας, Cabindistan.
Vocabulary.

Ῥόδος, f., Rhodes.
Ῥωξάνη, daughter of Oxyartes, married to Alexander.
Σάρδας, ἐω, Sardis, chief city of Lydia.
Σιδών, ἕω, f., Sidon.
Σκύθαι, Scythians.
Σωδιανή, Sodianna.
Σούσα, n. plur. Susa, capital of Persia; adj., Σωσισάνος.
Σύρια, Syria.
Σωχοι, in Assyria.

Τάναῖς, Don.
Τάξια, n. plur., in E. India, between Indus and Hydaspes.
Τάρσους, f., Tarsus, chief city of Cilicia.
Τηγάς, ρός, m., Tigris.
Τυμάλλας, general in the Cade.
Τράλλας, town in Asia Minor.
Τριβαλλοί, tribe of Illyria.

Τρωικός, Trojan.
Τύρος, f., Tyre.
Τυάσπης, Hydaspes.
Τυρκανία, Hyrcania.
Τυφνάς, Hyphasis.

Φαρσάλιοι [ἰππεῖς], pick of Thessalian cavalry.
Φιλότας, son of Parmenio.
Φιλίππος: (1) father of Alexander.
(2) Acarnanian, physician who healed Alexander at Tarsus.
Φοινικία, Phoenicia.
Φρυγία, Phrygia.
Φρυγίς, Φρυγίς, Phrygian.
Φωκίς, Phocians.

Οξός, Oxus (or Amus), river in Asia, rising in the Hindoo Koosh.

MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

The following Elementary Books, with Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases with Exercises, are ready:—

Aeschylus.—PROMETHEUS VINCTUS. Edited by Rev. H. M. Stephenson, M.A.


Caesar.—THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. Walpole, M.A.


THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by the Rev. W. G. Rutherfurd, M.A., LL.D.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK IV. Edited by C. Bryans, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK V. Edited by C. Colbeck, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by C. Colbeck, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK VII. Edited by Rev. John Bond, M.A., and A. S. Walpole, M.A.

 Cicero.—DE SENECTUTE. Edited by E. S. Shuckburgh, M.A. DE AMICITIA. By the same Editor.


Homer.—ILIAD. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. John Bond, M.A., and A. S. Walpole, M.A.

ILIAD. BOOK XVIII. THE ARMS OF ACHILLES. Edited by S. R. James, M.A.

ODYSSEY. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. John Bond, M.A. and A. S. Walpole, M.A.

Horace.—ODES. I.—IV. Edited by T. E. Page, M.A. Each 1s. 6d.

Livy.—BOOK I. Edited by H. M. Stephenson, M.A.

THE HANNAHIALAN WAR. Being part of the XXI. and XXII. Books of Livy, adapted for the use of Beginners. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A.


LEGENDS OF EARLY ROME. Adapted for the use of Beginners. By Herbert Wilkinson. With Exercises.

Macmillan's Elementary Classics.—Continued.

Cornelius Nepos.—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY. Edited for the use of Beginners. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A. With Exercises.

Ovid.—SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAIC VERSE. Arranged and Edited by HERBERT WILKINSON, M.A. With Exercises in Latin Verse Composition.


Phaedrus.—SELECT FABLES. Adapted for the use of Beginners by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. With Exercises.


Virgil.—AENEID. Book I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

AENEID. Book IV. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A.

AENEID. Book V. Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.

AENEID. Book IX. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON.

SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

GEORGICS. Book I. Edited by C. BRYANS, M.A. [In preparation.

Xenophon.—ANABASIS. Book I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

SELECTIONS FROM ANABASIS. Book I. Edited for the use of Beginners by E. A. WELLS, M.A. With Exercises.

THE RETREAT OF THE TEN THOUSAND. Selected from ANABASIS, Book IV., with Exercises. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A. [In the Press.

SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. Edited by A. H. COOKE, M.A. With Exercises.

The following more advanced Books, with Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary, are ready:—

Cicero.—SELECT LETTERS. Edited by Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A.

Euripides.—HICUBA. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Herodotus.—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. AND VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. Edited by A. H. COOKE, M.A.

Horace.—SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Edited by Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A.

SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by H. A. DALTON, M.A.

Plato.—EUPHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

Terence.—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. Edited by F. W. CORNHILL, M.A.

The Greek Elegiac Poets.—FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected and Edited by Rev. H. KYNASTON, D.D.

Thucydides.—BOOK IV. CHS. I.—XLII. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACERIA. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

Virgil.—GEORGICS. Book II. Edited by Rev. J. H. SKRINE.

LATIN ACCIDENT AND EXERCISES. Arranged for Beginners. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

* * * Other Volumes to follow.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.